Good Laboratory Standards for Clinical Next-Generation Sequencing Cancer Panel Tests

Molecular Testing of Brain Tumor, Lymphoproliferative Disorders, and Lung Cancers
The Journal of Pathology and Translational Medicine is an open venue for the rapid publication of major achievements in various fields of pathology, cytopathology, and biomedical and translational research. The Journal aims to share new insights into the molecular and cellular mechanisms of human diseases and to report major advances in both experimental and clinical medicine, with a particular emphasis on translational research. The investigations of human cells and tissues using high-dimensional biology techniques such as genomics and proteomics will be given a high priority. Articles on stem cell biology are also welcome. The categories of manuscript include original articles, review and perspective articles, case studies, Brief Case reports, and letters to the editor.

Contact the Korean Society of Pathologists/the Korean Society for Cytopathology

Publisher: Han Kyoom Kim, MD, Hye Kyung Yoon, MD
Published by the Korean Society of Pathologists/the Korean Society for Cytopathology

Front cover image: Intravascular Large B-Cell Lymphoma with Concomitant Extravascular Central Nervous System (CNS) Involvement (Fig. 2, 3). p287-288.
## CONTENTS

### REVIEWS

191  **Good Laboratory Standards for Clinical Next-Generation Sequencing Cancer Panel Tests**  

205  **Molecular Testing of Brain Tumor**  
Sung-Hye Park, Jaekyung Won, Seong-Ik Kim, Yujin Lee, Chul-Kee Park, Seung-Ki Kim, Seung-Hong Choi

224  **Molecular Testing of Lymphoproliferative Disorders: Current Status and Perspectives**  

242  **Molecular Testing of Lung Cancers**  
Hyo Sup Shim, Yoon-La Choi, Lucia Kim, Sunhee Chang, Wan-Seop Kim, Mee Sook Roh, Tae-Jung Kim, Seung Yeon Ha, Jin-Haeng Chung, Se Jin Jang, Geon Kook Lee, The Korean Cardiopulmonary Pathology Study Group, The Korean Molecular Pathology Study Group

### ORIGINAL ARTICLES

255  **Clinicopathological Study of 18 Cases of Inflammatory Myofibroblastic Tumors with Reference to ALK-1 Expression: 5-Year Experience in a Tertiary Care Center**  
Ramesh Babu Telugu, Anne Jennifer Prabhu, Nobin Babu Kalappurayil, John Mathai, Birla Roy Gnanamuthu, Marie Therese Manipadam

264  **Characteristic Changes in Decidual Gene Expression Signature in Spontaneous Term Parturition**  

284  **A Small Case Series of Intravascular Large B-Cell Lymphoma with Unexpected Findings: Subset of Cases with Concomitant Extravascular Central Nervous System (CNS) Involvement Mimicking Primary CNS Lymphoma**  
Kate Poropatich, Dave Dittmann, Yi-Hua Chen, Kirtee Raparia, Kristy Welnick, Juehua Gao

292  **An Experimental Infarct Targeting the Internal Capsule: Histopathological and Ultrastructural Changes**  
Chang-Woo Han, Kyung-Hwa Lee, Myung Gun Noh, Jin-Myung Kim, Hyung-Seok Kim, Hyung-Sun Kim, Ra-Gyung Kim, Jongwook Cho, Hyoung-Ihl Kim, Min-Cheol Lee

306 Overexpression of POSTN in Tumor Stroma Is a Poor Prognostic Indicator of Colorectal Cancer
   Hyeon Jeong Oh, Jeong-Mo Bae, Xian-Yu Wen, Nam-Yun Cho, Jung Ho Kim, Gyeong-Hoon Kang

314 Comparison of Unsatisfactory Samples from Conventional Smear versus Liquid-Based Cytology in Uterine Cervical Cancer Screening Test
   Hoiseon Jeong, Sung Ran Hong, Seoung-Wan Chae, So-Young Jn, Hye-Kyoung Yoon, Ju-hie Lee, Eun Kyung Kim, Sook Tai Ha, Sung Nam Kim, Eun-Jung Park, Jong Jae Jung, Sun Hee Sung, Sung-Chul Lim

CASE REPORTS

320 Unusual Histology of Eosinophilic Myenteric Ganglionitis: A Case Report
   Hyekyung Lee, Dongwook Kang, Heejin Kim, Byungsun Cho, Jeho Jang

325 Clear Cell Renal Cell Carcinoma with Intratumoral Granulomatous Reaction: A Case Report and Review of the Literature
   Hayeon Kim, Jong Wook Kim, Aeree Kim, Hyeyoon Chang

329 Human Papillomavirus Infection–Associated Adenoid Cystic Carcinoma of the Hard Palate
   Arthur Minwoo Chung, Dong Il Sun, Eun Sun Jung, Youn Soo Lee

332 A Rare Case of Nodular Mucinosis of the Breast
   Hyun Min Koh, Young Hee Maeng, Bo Geun Jang, Jae Hyuk Choi, Chang Lim Hyun

335 Cerebellar Liponeurocytoma: Relevant Clinical Cytogenetic Findings

Instructions for Authors for Journal of Pathology and Translational Medicine are available at http://jpatholtm.org/authors/authors.php
Good Laboratory Standards for Clinical Next-Generation Sequencing Cancer Panel Tests

Jihun Kim1,2,4 · Woong-Yang Park1,4 · Nayoung K. D. Kim3 · Se Jin Jang1,2 · Sung-Min Chun1,2 · Chang-Ohk Sung1,2 · Jene Choi1 · Young-Hyeh Ko3 · Yoon-La Choi1 · Hyo Sup Shim1 · Jae-Kyung Won2 · The Molecular Pathology Study Group of Korean Society of Pathologists

1Department of Pathology, Asan Medical Center, University of Ulsan College of Medicine, Seoul; 2Center for Cancer Genome Discovery, Asan Institute for Life Sciences, Seoul; 3Samsung Genome Institute, Sungkyunkwan University School of Medicine, Seoul; 4Department of Pathology, Samsung Medical Center, Sungkyunkwan University School of Medicine, Seoul; 5Department of Pathology, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Seoul; 6Department of Pathology, Seoul National University College of Medicine, Seoul, Korea

Received: February 20, 2017
Accepted: March 14, 2017

Corresponding Author
Jihun Kim, MD, PhD
Department of Pathology, Asan Medical Center, University of Ulsan College of Medicine, 88 Olympic-ro 43-gil, Songpa-gu, Seoul 05505, Korea
Tel: +82-2-3010-4556
Fax: +82-2-472-7898
E-mail: jihunkim@amc.seoul.kr

*Jihun Kim and Woong-Yang Park contributed equally to this work as co-first authors.

Key Words: High-throughput nucleotide sequencing; Molecular pathology; Neoplasms; Quality control; Practice guidelines as topic

By virtue of completion of the human genome project, a set of technologies that are referred to as next-generation sequencing (NGS) has been developed.1,2 Being able to sequence millions of short fragments of DNA simultaneously, NGS technologies have achieved unprecedented high-throughput and low per-base cost. The combination of its powerful analytic performances and the rapidly dropping cost of NGS rapidly brought NGS to clinic. However, the amount and complexity of sequencing data, especially for cancer genome sequencing, raised concerns about the reliability of NGS cancer panels. Regarding this issue, several working groups, including the College of American Pathologists (CAP) or the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics (ACMG), issued guidelines on NGS cancer panel testing procedures and requirements for clinical implementation of NGS. This consensus standard proposal consists of two parts: laboratory guidelines and requirements for clinical NGS laboratories. The laboratory guidelines part addressed several important issues across multi-step NGS cancer panel tests including choice of gene panel and platform, sample handling, nucleic acid management, sample identity tracking, library preparation, sequencing, analysis and reporting. Requirements for clinical NGS tests were summarized in terms of documentation, validation, quality management, and other required written policies. Together with appropriate pathologist training and international laboratory standards, these laboratory standards would help molecular pathology laboratories to successfully implement NGS cancer panel tests in clinic. In this way, the oncology community would be able to help patients to benefit more from personalized cancer medicine.

Next-generation sequencing (NGS) has recently emerged as an essential component of personalized cancer medicine due to its high throughput and low per-base cost. However, no sufficient guidelines for implementing NGS as a clinical molecular pathology test are established in Korea. To ensure clinical grade quality without inhibiting adoption of NGS, a taskforce team assembled by the Korean Society of Pathologists developed laboratory guidelines for NGS cancer panel testing procedures and requirements for clinical implementation of NGS. This consensus standard proposal consists of two parts: laboratory guidelines and requirements for clinical NGS laboratories. The laboratory guidelines part addressed several important issues across multi-step NGS cancer panel tests including choice of gene panel and platform, sample handling, nucleic acid management, sample identity tracking, library preparation, sequencing, analysis and reporting. Requirements for clinical NGS tests were summarized in terms of documentation, validation, quality management, and other required written policies. Together with appropriate pathologist training and international laboratory standards, these laboratory standards would help molecular pathology laboratories to successfully implement NGS cancer panel tests in clinic. In this way, the oncology community would be able to help patients to benefit more from personalized cancer medicine.

Key Words: High-throughput nucleotide sequencing; Molecular pathology; Neoplasms; Quality control; Practice guidelines as topic

By virtue of completion of the human genome project, a set of technologies that are referred to as next-generation sequencing (NGS) has been developed.1,2 Being able to sequence millions of short fragments of DNA simultaneously, NGS technologies have achieved unprecedented high-throughput and low per-base cost. The combination of its powerful analytic performances and the rapidly dropping cost of NGS rapidly brought NGS to clinic. However, the amount and complexity of sequencing data, especially for cancer genome sequencing, raised concerns about the reliability of NGS cancer panels. Regarding this issue, several working groups, including the College of American Pathologists (CAP) or the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics (ACMG), issued guidelines on NGS cancer panel testing procedures and requirements for clinical implementation of NGS. This consensus standard proposal consists of two parts: laboratory guidelines and requirements for clinical NGS laboratories. The laboratory guidelines part addressed several important issues across multi-step NGS cancer panel tests including choice of gene panel and platform, sample handling, nucleic acid management, sample identity tracking, library preparation, sequencing, analysis and reporting. Requirements for clinical NGS tests were summarized in terms of documentation, validation, quality management, and other required written policies. Together with appropriate pathologist training and international laboratory standards, these laboratory standards would help molecular pathology laboratories to successfully implement NGS cancer panel tests in clinic. In this way, the oncology community would be able to help patients to benefit more from personalized cancer medicine.
tests without inhibiting further upgrade of NGS-based technologies.

Unlike traditional single gene-based sequencing tests, the NGS cancer panel involves a complex two-step process: (1) wet bench process and (2) bioinformatics analysis of sequence data. The wet bench process includes the handling of patient samples, extraction of nucleic acids, fragmentation and barcoding, target enrichment, adaptor ligation, library preparation, and generation of sequence reads. Bioinformatics analysis includes mapping sequence reads to the human reference genome, variant calling, annotation, and reviewing data in the right clinical context. We regarded these two steps as distinct processes requiring separate standards because some laboratories might use external facilities to perform either portion of the NGS cancer panel tests. This report aims to provide a general guidance for developing more detailed NGS checklists, that will be done by a separate working group involving regulatory agencies in the near future.

LABORATORY GUIDELINES FOR NEXT-GENERATION SEQUENCING CANCER PANEL TESTS

Choice of genes to be tested and test platforms

Traditionally, only a limited number of clinically validated predictive or prognostic biomarkers have been approved as clinical tests. However, accumulating genomic data obtained from multiple tumor types and expansion of genome-based clinical trials suggest that many of the future anti-cancer treatments and clinical trials will require comprehensive diagnostic panels that allow the detection of multiple mutations at the same time. Such tests might involve either probe-based capture or primer-based amplification for the enrichment of genomic regions to be tested.

The number and scope of genes to be tested depend on the purpose of the test. If the purpose is limited to companion diagnostics for current standard care, the number of genes would be very limited. However, if there is a need for clinical trials for which NGS-based tests are required to stratify patients, a broader range of genes should be interrogated. In this context, the currently used cancer panel tests are mainly focused on clinically actionable genomic alterations at selected protein-coding regions that are defined by the availability of approved drugs and pathognomonic molecular features. However, there is an increasing need for adding genomic alterations associated with resistance to molecularly targeted therapies or predicted response to investigational drugs. Furthermore, genomic data could be used to refine pathological diagnosis. For example, mutations in IDH1 or IDH2 and co-deletion of chromosome 1p and 19q are already incorporated in recently revised pathological diagnosis of diffuse glioma.

There are several NGS platforms such as Illumina, Ion Torrent, and Roche 454, and all of which have been reported to be as reliable as the current standard genotyping tools at least for the important cancer genes provided that laboratories perform adequate quality control. Thus, pathology laboratories may choose their preferred platforms based on their individual requirements, such as expected sample status (i.e., small biopsies, resected tissue samples, or liquid biopsies, etc.), expected number of samples, and/or types of variants to be analyzed (e.g., copy-number analysis might be limited in platforms that use primer-based amplification during target enrichment). It is important for laboratories to be aware of platform characteristics and perform adequate quality controls depending on the platform characteristics.

Specimen handling

Sample transportation, receipt, and storage

Adequate processing of tissue samples is essential in a reliable NGS cancer panel test. Required specimen handling procedures are nearly the same as those required for traditional single-gene tests. Briefly, the quality and the amount of neutral buffered formalin relative to the size of the specimen should be monitored. The time interval from specimen acquisition to fixation should be minimized, and optimal fixation duration should be monitored. The optimal fixation duration depends on the dimension of each sample because formalin penetrates tissue at a rate of approximately 1 mm per hour. The rule of thumb for recommended fixation duration for surgically resected specimen is 24 hours.

Morphological assessment and designation of ideal tumor area

Correct pathologic diagnosis and assessment of the fraction of neoplastic cell nuclei in tumor area by pathologists are crucial for the interpretation of NGS results. Once the diagnosis and tumor purity are established, it is strongly recommended that the pathologists circle an area from which nucleic acid is extracted so that neoplastic cells are enriched to the appropriate level of tumor purity. The minimum requirement of tumor purity can be established in the initial validation of test performances (see “Validation” section). The estimated tumor purity of a selected area should be documented. When tumor purity is assessed, the
pathologists should be aware of the fact that the relative number of tumor cell nuclei reflects tumor purity rather than occupied tumor area. Thus, an area with heavy inflammatory cell infiltration should be avoided (Fig. 1A, B). Also, to ensure DNA quality, pathologists should try to avoid necrotic areas (Fig. 1C) and areas with extensive extracellular mucin (Fig. 1D).

**Nucleic acid extraction, quantification, and storage**

For clinical tests, DNA extraction kits should have a high level of performance specification to obtain DNA of sufficient quality and quantity for intended NGS tests from formalin-fixed paraffin embedded (FFPE) samples. In addition, DNA extraction procedures should have appropriate mechanisms by which sample contamination or misidentification could be avoided. Several commercially available kits that use silica-based or magnetic bead–based extraction protocols meet such requirements.

A major cause of sequence artifacts is deamination of cytosine resulting in C to T transitions during amplification. Formalin fixation and longer storage period contribute to this process. Since those sequence artifacts are usually present at a very low frequency, such artifacts are unlikely to affect test results if sufficient amounts of unique DNA molecules are available. However, if the DNA input amount is too small or if the purpose is to detect variants with low allelic fraction, these artifacts would be a problem. In addition, amplicon-based methods are more susceptible to these artifacts than hybridization capture-based methods. Thus, laboratories may choose DNA extraction protocols with enzymatic removal of uracil-containing templates when they interrogate FFPE samples with highly fragmented DNA or with low tumor purity by amplicon-based methods. In the case of decalcified specimens, DNA quality or quantity is inferior to

![Fig. 1](image-url)
those of the specimens without decalcification. Regarding this, it has been reported that a decalcification protocol involving ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid might be better than that involving hydrochloric acid in terms of usable nucleic acid for subsequent NGS analysis. 

Quantitation of extracted nucleic acids can be done by NanoDrop, Qubit, or the Picogreen method. Among them, NanoDrop is not recommended because it also detects nucleic acids that are not suitable for downstream analyses. Nucleic acids should be stored under highly controlled conditions in order to maintain sample identity and integrity. Extracted DNA is to be stored at –20°C and RNA at –80°C. Sequencing libraries and polymerase chain reaction (PCR) products may be stored in –20°C but should be separated from pre-amplification materials to prevent them from contaminating pre-amplification materials.

Sample identity tracking
Like other single gene–based tests, verification of sample identity is the most basic and important aspect in clinical NGS test. The NGS cancer panel tests involve many steps, making them inherently subject to sample mix-up or swapping. Thus, test procedures should have an appropriate system to minimize such critical events. For example, panels could be designed to include a number of single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) markers that allow molecular barcoding of patient samples so that sample identity can be traced. In addition, an electronic laboratory information management system could be useful for this purpose. With any tool in place, it is important to enable end-to-end sample tracking in clinical NGS cancer panel tests.

Library preparation
Library preparation is the step where extracted nucleic acids are prepared for the sequencing reaction. It involves DNA fragmentation, adaptor ligation, and enrichment of the target of interest. Target enrichment can be done either by an amplicon-based approach or by hybridization-based capture. Molecular barcodes are usually introduced to enable sample identification and pooling of multiple samples in a single flow cell lane. To avoid contamination, all steps before amplification should be done in a separate space. In addition, extra-caution should be in place during sample transportation from pre-PCR area to post-PCR area. After library preparation, appropriate quality controls should be applied to determine whether the rest of the procedures should be continued. Quality controls include quantitation, fragment size analysis, and quantitative PCR using adaptor sequences for priming.

Data analysis of sequence reads
Bioinformatics pipelines used for the analysis of NGS data consists of multiple steps, such as de-multiplexing, read alignment, de-duplication, base calibration, variant calling, filtering, and annotation. Currently, no single “gold-standard” algorithm exists. Therefore, laboratories should choose the most suitable algorithm for the types of variants to be reported and optimize them. In the absence of a “gold standard,” it is important to validate the analytic performance of the bioinformatics pipelines. It is also important to make sure that all versions of algorithms are traceable and properly updated (see “Validation” section).

Sequencing read
The initial step after sequencing includes converting the base intensities in a sequencer to digital-level nucleotide sequences, called FASTQ. Although the types of signals differ among various sequencing platforms, most have their internal software for translating base calling into the compressed and de-multiplexed FASTQ files. The nucleotides in FASTQ have corresponding base quality scores that are in a form of logarithmic scales indicating the probabilistic confidence level of the bases. Appropriate quality control should be done to confirm the general integrity of the sequencing data, such as the total number of bases, sequence contents (including GC contents), per base sequence quality, etc. Read trimming is recommended if the base quality or composition does not meet the quality control threshold that each laboratory has empirically set up or that the sequencer manufacturer has recommended.

Alignment
This step is to find where the short read sequences are located. In general, single or pair-end reads are first aligned (mapped) to a human genome reference. It is essential to include the version of the human reference sequence in the clinical report. Since poorly mapped sequences may lead to compromise the reliability of called variants, especially in solid tumors with low tumor content, sequencing reads should be filtered based on mapping quality score so that only confidently mapped reads are processed further. After the initial mapping, read duplicates should be removed, because unwanted clonal amplification of reads with sequence artifacts may lead to false-positive variant calls. Alignment is often challenging when the sequence reads come from genomic regions having large insertions or deletions, repetitive regions, pseudogenes, or homologous genes because there can be several other similar-looking genomic regions across the reference genome. Realignment using known references that
have the suspected insertions or deletions may be necessary in such cases.

**Variant calling: single nucleotide variation, insertion/deletion, copy-number variation, and translocation**

Somatic variants can be identified by subtracting variants found in non-neoplastic cells from those found in cancer. If a laboratory chooses not to sequence the corresponding normal samples, it should be noted that some germline variations might exist in the result. Laboratories should consider the implementation of modular analysis pipelines, in which different algorithms or settings are used to call different types of variants: single nucleotide variations (SNVs), insertion/deletion (Indels), copy-number variations (CNVs), and translocations.

**SNV/Indel**

The quality of variant calls is strongly related to the quality of alignment. The key challenge of variant calling is to distinguish real variants from sequencing errors. In general, the more times the variant is sequenced, the more reliable the variant call is. The minimum depth of coverage depends on the required sensitivity of the intended assay, the sequencing platform and the types of mutations to be detected. Although sensitivity is increased in proportion to sequencing depth, false-positive calls may also be increased especially in cases with low tumor content. There are various reasons for false-positive variant calls; they often result from PCR errors, sequencing errors, mis-mapped reads on repetitive sequences or homologous regions and so forth. Because each variant calling algorithm uses different strategies to filter out false calls, different algorithms sometimes generate discrepant results. Thus, laboratories should find optimal parameter settings during assay development and validation to minimize algorithm-dependent result variability.

Reliable identification of Indels is particularly challenging because sequence reads containing this type of variants are not often accurately mapped. Thus, the sensitivity and specificity for this type of variants is often reduced. With regard to this, laboratories should identify clinically important Indels and validate assay performances to establish reasonable sensitivity and positive predictive value for the identification of those Indels.

Due to the high rate of false-positives, manual review by using visualization tools and comparison with the same regions in other samples on the same run is recommended for all Indel calls.

**Copy-number variation**

The reliable identification of CNV is quite difficult in NGS cancer panel sequencing because of the uneven target coverage related to hybridization capturing steps, the absence of matched normal data, or the lack of coverage uniformity. Although algorithms for detecting CNV in targeted NGS tests are improving, the inherent limitations in cancer panel sequencing of clinical FFPE samples require robust validation of test performance. This type of validation can be done by testing characterized cancer cell lines or clinical samples with known CNV profiles (see “Validation” section), although there is no agreement upon the minimal number of samples for appropriate validation.

**Translocation**

Translocation can be identified based on the DNA level, using discordant or split sequencing reads. However, the inherent limitations of short-reads in terms of alignment can result in many false positive calls. Therefore, the test performance should be appropriately validated using reference materials with known translocations across targeted genomic regions that have been confirmed by the current gold standard. Furthermore, it is highly recommended that all translocation calls be manually reviewed by using genome visualization tools such as the Integrative Genomics Viewer. Finally, it should be noted that a translocation can be missed if the breakpoint of fusion (may be somewhere in the introns not covered by the panel) is not included in targeted genomic regions, even though protein-coding regions of the translocation partners are included in the panel.

**Variant annotation and filtering**

Variant annotation determines if a sequence variant is real and provides predicted resulting amino acid changes. To identify true somatic variants, false variants should be properly filtered. Important sources of false variants include cytosine deamination, amplification errors, and sequencing errors. Cytosine deaminations are introduced ex vivo; these variants are not copied to the opposite strand, meaning that the artifacts are only present on one strand. To facilitate the detection of cytosine deamination artifacts, laboratories may use techniques such as molecular inversion probe and HaloPlex and Duplex sequencing, to enrich and sequence both the sense and antisense DNA strands. Amplification errors can be introduced due to DNA polymerase errors during amplification steps of library enrichment. These errors might be minimized by the application of unique barcodes to individual DNA molecules during library enrichment. If the same variant is detected in multiple unique molecules, the variant might be real because it is unlikely that individual molecules acquire the same polymerase error during amplification.
ing errors are highly dependent on the sequencing platform and sequencing chemistry. The ability to call SNVs and Indels is known to be similarly accurate for data generated on the PGM and Illumina platform, provided that there is sufficient coverage.24

Interpretation of computational output

Depending on the types of variants (e.g., missense, nonsense, etc.) and the types of genes (e.g., hotspots in oncogenes vs randomly distributed mutations in tumor suppressor genes), interpretation of detected variants can be simple or quite complicated. Basically, the ACMG strongly recommends that interpretation is performed by trained staffs such as clinical molecular geneticists or molecular pathologists.4 A multi-disciplinary sequencing data analysis team with various scientific backgrounds including clinical oncology, genomics, bioinformatics, and pathology, is recommended for accurate interpretation.

For variants that are not hotspot mutations, germline variants should be excluded first. Since most cancer panel tests do not analyze matched non-neoplastic tissue, laboratories should prepare mechanisms to filter out potential germline variants based on the genetic polymorphism data on the population to which the tested patient belongs. In most instances, laboratories use public databases on germline polymorphism such as the 1000 Genomes Project, ExAC, or dbSNP (Table 1), but ideally, these data should be derived from the same ethnic group as the tested patient.

Since the clinical and biological significance of cancer-related genomic variants are increasingly characterized, many variants detected in most cancer panel tests have related information in public databases (see “Reporting” section for details). However, previously uncharacterized variants may also be detected considering the characteristics of NGS tests. Potential biological significance, or pathogenicity, could be inferred from the archived genotype-phenotype correlation data such as ClinVar, Human Gene Mutation Database, and Leiden Open Variation Database (Table 1). In addition, the in silico prediction of functional impacts is available in dbNSFP or Ensembl Variant Effector (Table 1). Since no single database is perfect, it is essential to refer to multiple resources for appropriate interpretation. Finally, knowledge about variants will be continuously improved with the accumulation of each lab’s experiences and feedbacks from clinicians.

Reporting

General format

Reporting of NGS cancer panel test results should follow the general professional organizations’ recommendations and guidelines.25 There are two major essential parts of a report: proper patient identification and detected actionable variants. The patient identification part is the same as that in the current standard single gene-based tests, but the detected variant part is more complex and sophisticated in clinical NGS cancer panel tests because typical NGS cancer panel tests detect multiple variants at the same time. The clinical NGS report should include the essential information listed in Table 2, and the most pertinent information, such as actionable variants and a critical summary of those variants, should be placed in a clearly visible section on the first page. Detected sequence variants should be annotated in concordance with the Human Genome Mutation nomenclature and the version of the human reference sequence to which sequence reads were aligned should also be

Table 1. Useful online resources for variant interpretation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Database/Algorithm</th>
<th>URL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1000 Genomes Project</td>
<td><a href="http://browser.1000genomes.org/">http://browser.1000genomes.org/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ExAC</td>
<td><a href="http://exac.broadinstitute.org">http://exac.broadinstitute.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancer-specific somatic variants</td>
<td>COSMIC</td>
<td><a href="http://cancer.sanger.ac.uk/cosmic">http://cancer.sanger.ac.uk/cosmic</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cBioPortal</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cbioportal.org/">http://www.cbioportal.org/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>My Cancer Genome</td>
<td><a href="https://www.mycancergenome.org/">https://www.mycancergenome.org/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CIVIC</td>
<td><a href="https://covic.genome.wustl.edu/#/">https://covic.genome.wustl.edu/#/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Personalized Cancer Therapy, MD Anderson Cancer Center</td>
<td><a href="http://pct.mdanderson.org/#/">http://pct.mdanderson.org/#/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Human Gene Mutation Database</td>
<td><a href="http://www.hgmd.cf.ac.uk/ac/index.php">http://www.hgmd.cf.ac.uk/ac/index.php</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Leiden Open Variation Database</td>
<td><a href="http://www.lovd.nl/3.0/home">http://www.lovd.nl/3.0/home</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In silico functional prediction</td>
<td>dbNSFP (pre-computed in silico functional prediction and annotation of non-synonymous SNVs)</td>
<td><a href="http://sites.google.com/site/jpopgen/dbNSFP">http://sites.google.com/site/jpopgen/dbNSFP</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This list is not comprehensive and only provides some examples. All websites were last accessed on January 3, 2017.

ExAC, Exome Aggregation Consortium; COSMIC, Catalog of Somatic Mutations in Cancer; CIVIC, Clinical Interpretations of Variants in Cancer; NSFP, non-synonymous functional prediction; SNV, single nucleotide variation.
included in the report. Variants, which are not clinically actionable but are potentially useful for future practice, might follow the actionable variants. Then, detailed information about the detected variants (see the “Interpretation” section) and essential technical information, such as genes or genomic regions included in the panel and key quality control metrics, may be listed. Inclusion of granular details of technical information is not recommended, but a description of how clinicians can obtain the details may be included.26

Presentation of detected variants and clinical translation

Since typical cancer panel results include several cancer-related genomic variants with different levels of clinical or biological evidences, variants should be classified and reported according to the level of evidences. Several leading institutions use their own variant classification system and each institution may discuss with clinicians about which variant classification system should be used. However, a recently published related guideline is a good example27: (1) Tier 1, strong clinical significance such as Food and Drug Administration (FDA)–approved therapies, professional guidelines, prognostic and diagnostic markers based on well-powered studies with expert consensus; (2) Tier 2, potential clinical significance such as FDA-approved therapies for different tumor types, investigational therapies, prognostic and diagnostic markers based on small published studies with some consensus and preclinical trials or case reports without consensus; (3) Tier 3, unknown clinical significance; and (4) Tier 4, benign or likely benign. Tier 1 to 3 variants should be included in the clinical NGS report in a decreasing order of clinical significance and it is not recommended to include Tier 4 variants in clinical NGS report.

Interpretation of detected variants in terms of their clinical impact and pathogenicity is a daunting task. As mentioned in the “Interpretation of computational output” section, many information sources such as public databases, published guidelines, and computational prediction algorithms should be integrated for proper interpretation. In addition to the previously mentioned public databases on germline polymorphism, in silico prediction of the functional impacts, genotype-phenotype relationship, and several cancer-specific mutation databases are available online (Table 1). These resources are very useful in the interpretation of variants in the context of cancer, but it is important to make sure that the database is properly curated, referenced and updated in a regular basis. Regarding this, FDA guidance suggested that appropriate databases should implement decision matrices with published details of each variant’s interpretation and have documented standard operating procedures (SOPs) for the curation and update of this information.28

When assigning variants to each tier, it is essential that they should be interpreted in the context of both variant details (e.g., BRAF V600E) and patient tumor type (e.g., malignant melanoma vs colorectal cancer). This is because different variants in a single gene may have different clinical impacts and the clinical significance of a particular variant may vary depending on the tumor type. For tier 1 variants, a clear statement on their clinical relevance and any appropriate action should be included. Also, it might be helpful to clarify the absence of other variants that are important in the patient tumor type. For tier 2 variants, advising the ordering physician about available clinical trials may be useful. In addition, tier information is subject to change as new evidences and therapeutic options are continuously emerging.

In cases where only limited interpretation can be made and full quality control standards could not be met, it is essential that pathologists make a professional judgment on whether the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 2. Information to be included in the clinical NGS report</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Element</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient identification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specimen type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pathologic diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tissue sample identification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Important dates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percentage of tumor nuclei of the sample used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variants found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version of reference genome used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NGS method used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key quality control metrics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genes or genomic regions included in the panel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interpretation and summary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NGS, next-generation sequencing; FFPE, formalin-fixed paraffin embedded; HGVS, Human Genome Variation Society; EGFR, epidermal growth factor receptor.
result should be reported. Also, any limitation of the analysis should be clarified in the report. For example, negative results in samples with low neoplastic cell content at near or below the established sample rejection criteria should be accompanied by a note on potential false negatives. Furthermore, clinical NGS laboratories should have clearly defined protocols about when additional confirmatory tests should be advised, as well as performance validation data in cases where those confirmatory tests are not necessary.

**REQUIREMENTS FOR CLINICAL NEXT-GENERATION SEQUENCING LABORATORIES**

**Wet Bench Analytic Process**

**Documentation**

The detailed documentation of SOPs is critical for quality assurance of a complex, multi-step wet bench process. All SOPs of each step of the wet bench process must be documented so that each step can be traced. This includes documentation of all methods, reagents, instruments and controls (if applicable). Most of the documentations should be similar to those of current standard single gene testing, but those specific to NGS testing include detailed information regarding captured regions, such as genomic coordinates of captured probes and lists of genes and target enrichment protocols. Clinical laboratories that process different types of samples, such as FFPE samples or blood, should establish SOPs for each validated sample type. Metrics for quality control to assess run status must also be documented. Examples include mean target coverage, percentage of reads that map to target regions, and the fraction of bases meeting specified quality and coverage thresholds. Laboratories must define and document acceptance or rejection criteria for each step of the wet bench process, such as DNA extraction, library preparation, and sequencing.

**Validation**

Before testing patient samples, clinical NGS laboratories must establish the analytical validity of the intended tests. If the intended test is approved by the Ministry of Food and Drug Safety (MFDS), laboratories can verify the performance specifications established by the manufacturer. If the intended test is not approved by the MFDS, i.e., a laboratory-developed test, laboratories must establish performance characteristics such as accuracy, precision, sensitivity, specificity, and reportable range. Because NGS cancer panel tests involve complex, multistep processes, each step needs to be empirically optimized to determine optimal assay conditions. Once those optimizations are done, an analytic validation should be performed for a whole test in a "beginning to end" fashion. Test performance should be separately validated for different types of samples, such as FFPE or blood.

For "beginning to end" validation, a number of samples should be analyzed to assess the test performance. There is no general agreement on how many samples are required for this type of validation. With regard to this issue, the CAP concluded that adding a minimum number of samples for validation is premature given the ongoing evolution of NGS technologies and the diversity of diagnostic applications. Literature review revealed that the sample number for validation varied with a range of 20–80 samples. The minimum number of samples needed for an appropriate validation might be affected by the size of the test, i.e., a larger gene panel will require more extensive validation, and by the range of samples to be tested, i.e., FFPE samples with variable tumor content. Here, we suggest the general principles of validation in terms of several important analytic performance parameters.

Considering the inherent characteristics of NGS cancer panel tests, it is important to evaluate as many different genomic regions as possible because sequence context can influence sequencing results. In addition, laboratories should determine analytic performances for all variant types relevant to the intended test (e.g., SNV, Indel, CNV, and translocations). Since NGS-based tests interogate multiple variants at the same time, the validation of test performances involves two parts: method-specific (detection of as many variants as possible in a single sample) and analyte-specific (detection of a certain genomic variant in multiple samples). Laboratories can establish the test performances by combining those two approaches.

Accuracy validation is a "method-specific" way of validation. For this type of validation, laboratories might use well-characterized cancer cell line samples to interogate whether the intended test accurately detects all known variants within the genomic regions covered by the panel. In this case, reference cell line samples should be periodically monitored for identity and passage number to prevent a significant genetic drift. In addition, laboratories might use well-characterized HapMap samples (NA12878 and NA19240), variants of which are readily available on the web. Details of available reference materials are summarized in Table 3. Evaluation of these reference samples might be quite useful to validate the accuracy across a wide range of genomic
During this type of validation, an adequate depth of coverage threshold\(^\text{23}\) necessary to accurately call all expected variants can be empirically established by plotting false-positives and false-negatives as a function of coverage. Analytic sensitivity can be evaluated by comparing NGS test results with the current gold standard test results for known genetic variants in reference materials. To this end, laboratories may use historical controls such as accumulated clinical samples with well-characterized genomic variants by gold standard methods, provided that the gold standard tests were done in an appropriately accredited environment.

Analytic specificity is theoretically calculated by determining the fraction of test negatives (wild type sequence calls by the intended test) per true-negatives (samples that are known to have wild type sequences by the gold standard method). However, this concept often does not work well for NGS-based tests because too many potential variants are included in typical cancer panels. For most laboratories, it might be reasonable to leverage specificity by determining the average number of false-positive calls for the regions tested in a number of well-characterized clinical samples.

The limit of detection can be determined by cell line “mixing” experiments, in which a cell line with known genetic variants is serially diluted with another cell line without such variants to have different mixture ratios, which are then tested to determine whether the intended test accurately detects all specified variants under a certain coverage threshold. Alternatively, laboratories may determine the limit of detection by using the HapMap samples (NA12878 and NA19240) mentioned earlier by mixing them in various ratios and interrogating variants that differ between the two different HapMap samples.

Precision (repeatability for intra-run and reproducibility for inter-run variability) can be determined by repeating the same samples in the same run (repeatability) or by repeating the same sample in a different run (on a different day by a different operator). Ideally, testing at least three samples is recommended to adequately establish precision adequately.\(^\text{3}\)

Any changes to a clinical NGS test, such as changes in instruments, specimen types, reagents, or software, require that performance specifications be re-established or be shown to be unchanged. For example, inclusion of new genes to an existing gene panel requires revalidation to make sure that new sequence variations are reliably detected without compromising the quality of the original assay. The extent of re-validation depends on the predicted influence on the test performance related to the change. For example, if only the bioinformatics pipeline is updated, it may not be necessary to re-validate all steps before data analysis.

Quality management

Clinical NGS laboratories should establish and follow a quality management plan. This plan should be integrated within the institution’s overall quality assurance program. Components of the NGS quality management program are not much different from the traditional single gene-based tests. Once laboratories establish an initial validation of test performances, laboratories must perform internal quality controls daily and external quality controls periodically. Each component of the quality assurance program specific to NGS cancer panel tests is discussed in detail below.

Table 3. Reference materials for NGS: advantages and disadvantages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of material</th>
<th>Advantage</th>
<th>Disadvantage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genomic DNA from cell line</td>
<td>Large amount available</td>
<td>May have heterogeneity associated with cell line maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Similar complexity to patient’s DNA</td>
<td>Possible genomic instability over time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>May have well-characterized variants</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genomic DNA from patient’s sample</td>
<td>Identical condition to real samples</td>
<td>Not necessarily renewable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Limited amount of DNA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Well characterized genetic information may be limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synthetic DNA</td>
<td>Can synthesize a broad range of sequences and variations</td>
<td>Does not represent actual human cancer genome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can make sequence templates with complex regions (deletions or duplications)</td>
<td>May not perform as actual human cancer DNA due to differences in sequence complexity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Large amount available</td>
<td>Will not cover all regions of tested genome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>May exhibit higher variant calls due to errors in synthesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electronic reference data files</td>
<td>Can engineer any wanted sequence files</td>
<td>Reference only for data analysis step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Requires many reference datasets to mimic many types of sequence data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Data files may not be interoperable among different platforms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
tions for the use of NGS in different applications have been published and are summarized in Table 4. This guidance will work as a checklist for each component of the intended NGS test and related quality control metrics that require reviewing in order to feel confident about the quality of results. It is impractical to include multiple positive controls with different variant types during each run due to unacceptable cost and time. Instead, a single characterized external control with known variants in each run may be sufficient to demonstrate that the procedure is successful. Typically, this can be done by preparing a number of DNA aliquots from a large FFPE sample block whose genome has already been well-characterized genomically and include those aliquots in each run of patient samples.

External quality assurance program: proficiency testing and alternate assessment

The Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendment (CLIA) requires participation in a proficiency testing (PT) program twice a year for most clinical tests. For any clinical tests without such PT requirements, laboratories must verify test performance twice a year. Since PT programs specific to NGS cancer panel tests do not currently exist, laboratories may verify their test performance by using alternate assessment (AA), where de-identified patient samples are exchanged and re-tested between

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Checklist</th>
<th>Consequences of non-conformity</th>
<th>Improvement suggestions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tissue sample adequacy</td>
<td>Criteria for inadequate specimen</td>
<td>Testing inadequate specimens may lead to a waste of time and money or deletion of available samples. Inadequate amount or tumor content can lead to false-negative test results.</td>
<td>Check sample adequacy rigorously before testing. Request further sampling in case of inadequate samples.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nucleic acid extraction</td>
<td>DNA quantity and quality in terms of amplifiable DNA</td>
<td>DNA with suboptimal quality may inhibit sequencing reaction. Small amount or fragmentation of DNA may lead to poor quality sequencing data with insufficient or uneven coverage and/or high duplication rate.</td>
<td>Failed samples should be reported as such and further material might be requested with specified requirement. Trying another validated extraction method may often help.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample identification</td>
<td>Sample identity tracking throughout all steps</td>
<td>Misidentification of samples could lead to incorrect patient management.</td>
<td>If there is any concern about sample identity, starting over from DNA extraction may be necessary. Introduction of polymorphic SNP markers into gene panel and running another genotyping method with the same marker set might be helpful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library preparation</td>
<td>Minimum library concentration</td>
<td>Poor sequencing library may lead to insufficient or uneven coverage. Libraries with poor complexity or bias may result in false-negatives. False-positives may also occur due to potential amplification bias.</td>
<td>Consider modification of library preparation method or an alternative method to verify any uncertain results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequencing</td>
<td>Criteria for minimum sequencing depth and other quality metrics (%) reads mapped to target regions, % of targets with specified coverage, duplication rate</td>
<td>Inadequate coverage is associated with higher levels of uncertainty of the test results. Genomic regions with insufficient local coverage may lead to inaccurate results for variants located in those regions.</td>
<td>Repeat sequencing with existing library or start over from DNA extraction step. Verification of uncertain results with another method may be helpful, especially, in case of actionable variants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variant detection and review</td>
<td>Variant allele frequency, local sequencing depth and quality score</td>
<td>Failure to filter out sequencing artifacts may lead to false-positive results. Clinically important variants may sometimes be missed.</td>
<td>Manually review of clinically important variants even if computational algorithms called no mutation on them. Any ambiguous or unexpected results should be reviewed by laboratory scientists and pathologists. Verify variants with another method, if applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bioinformatics</td>
<td>Correct pipeline and version</td>
<td>Using outdated or inadequate software can lead to false-positive or false-negative results.</td>
<td>Update software on a regular basis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reporting</td>
<td>Endorsed by an authorized competent pathologist?</td>
<td>Variants with clinical significance may be reported erroneously, leading to inappropriate treatment.</td>
<td>Responsible pathologists should be given enough time and opportunities for education and training.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4. Recommended items to check prior to releasing NGS results for diagnostic use and QC metrics
different laboratories until formal PT programs are set.24 A Korean guideline published by the MFDS follows the same principle and requires documentation of all procedures related to PT or AA.41 There is no general agreement upon the number of reference materials per one round of PT or AA but analysis of two samples has been recommended.36

Policies: confirmatory testing, laboratory records, upgrades

As NGS cancer panel tests with appropriate quality controls are reported to meet a clinical grade performance,23,44-47 routine confirmatory testing is not recommended. However, laboratories should have a policy that clearly documents both any indication for confirmatory testing as well as any performance validation data upon which they decided that such confirmatory testing is not necessary. In addition, the CAP is flexible regarding the methods used for any needed confirmatory testing.

Keeping comprehensive laboratory records is essential in monitoring complex, multi-step NGS cancer panel tests. In this regard, such records should be maintained in such a way that all detailed information about test procedures including reagents, sequencing runs, wet lab, and bioinformatics procedures and responsible technicians is traceable. While all details need not be included in the clinical report, laboratories should maintain a database from which detailed information regarding the analysis of individual specimens can be obtained.

Laboratories must be prepared for upgrades to make sure that they are not using obsolete methods. A policy for the upgrade of instruments, sequencing chemistries, and reagents or kits, as well as subsequent post-upgrade validation of test performances should be in place. The policy may include specified intervals for upgrade and required validation processes, depending on the type or extent of upgrade.

Bioinformatics process

Documentation

Laboratories should document all bioinformatics processes, including all data files, variant caller’s parameters, and versions of the bioinformatics algorithms. Sources and versions of all bioinformatics algorithms should be documented and updated properly. Quality control information on bioinformatics analysis, such as the cut-off of read depth, base quality score, and mapping quality, should also be documented.

Validation and quality management

General validation principles were already discussed in the Validation proportion of the “Wet Bench Analytic Process” section. Briefly, for bioinformatics pipelines, laboratories should iteratively find parameters for optimal performance of computational algorithms before applying it to the lab process. Once the pipeline is initially validated, variations between sequencing runs should be monitored daily. Principles of the quality management were already discussed in the “Wet Bench Analytic Process” section. In short, laboratories should monitor any deviation from established performance characteristics in terms of quality metrics and analysis results. For any deviation, laboratories should document the investigational measures and corrective actions made to resolve the deviation. Essential quality metrics for bioinformatics performance verification include depth of coverage, uniformity of coverage and base call quality scores. In addition, GC bias, proportion of reads that map to nontargeted regions, and percentage of duplicated reads could also be used to monitor performances of sequencing reaction and subsequent bioinformatics analyses (Table 5).

Policies: upgrades, storage, and data management

The bioinformatics pipeline should be revalidated upon any changes in operating systems, software, or overall pipelines, which may otherwise affect its analytic performance. Since a huge amount of data files are generated from the bioinformatics pipeline, it is impractical to store all sorts of files considering the significant cost. Instead, the CAP NGS workgroup recommended that some important file formats, such as FASTQ, BAM, and VCF, should be stored for quality controls or investigational use.3 There is no general agreement on the required storage period, but it is important for laboratories to set their own storage policies in accordance with local or national requirements (if any) and inform clients of those policies.

CONCLUSION

Although the advancement of NGS technologies unraveled the genomic landscape of human malignancies and opened an era of genome-guided anti-cancer therapies, the complexity of NGS technologies made it especially difficult to set up regulatory or professional standards for assuring analytical validity of test results. In this report, the workgroup addressed general guidelines related to the test procedures and proposed requirements for clinical NGS cancer panel tests such as test validation, quality controls, reference materials and participation in PT or AA. Due to space limitations and the clinical implementation of NGS cancer panel tests being in its infancy, granular

https://doi.org/10.4132/jptm.2017.03.14

http://jpatholtm.org/
details were not covered in this review and those details should be addressed in further publications.

As clinical experiences accumulate and technologies evolve, more refined recommendations or guidelines could be published in the near future. In addition, good clinical decision support systems or knowledge bases need to be developed to help patients in terms of benefits from personalized FDA-approved or investigational therapies and prognostic information. To realize personalized cancer medicine in the end, it is important for medical communities to share information on genotype (oncogenic variants in patients' samples)–phenotype (drug response or prognosis) relationships, and all these efforts start with accurate genomic profiling of cancer tissue. To ensure reliability of NGS-based genomic profiling, a multi-disciplinary team approach, involving clinicians, pathologists, laboratory scientists, bioinformaticians, manufacturers, professional organizations, and government agencies, is essential.

**Conflicts of Interest**

No potential conflict of interest relevant to this article was reported.

**Acknowledgments**

The study was supported by the Korean Society of Pathologists Grant (2016).

**REFERENCES**


https://doi.org/10.4132/jptm.2017.03.14  http://jpatholtm.org/


Molecular Testing of Brain Tumor

The World Health Organization (WHO) classification of central nervous system (CNS) tumors was revised in 2016 with a basis on the integrated diagnosis of molecular genetics. We herein provide the guidelines for using molecular genetic tests in routine pathological practice for an accurate diagnosis and appropriate management. While astrocytomas and IDH-mutant (secondary) glioblastomas are characterized by the mutational status of IDH, TP53, and ATRX, oligodendrogliomas have a 1p/19q codeletion and mutations in IDH, CIC, FUBP1, and the promoter region of telomerase reverse transcriptase (TERTp). IDH-wildtype (primary) glioblastomas typically lack mutations in IDH, but are characterized by copy number variations of EGFR, PTEN, CDKN2A/B, PDGFRA, and NF1 as well as mutations of TERTp. High-grade pediatric gliomas differ from those of adult gliomas, consisting of mutations in H3F3A, ATRX, and DAXX, but not in IDH genes. In contrast, well-circumscribed low-grade neuroepithelial tumors in children, such as pilocytic astrocytoma, pleomorphic xanthoastrocytoma, and ganglioglioma, often have mutations or activating rearrangements in the BRAF, FGFR1, and MYB genes. Other CNS tumors, such as ependymomas, neuronal and glioneuronal tumors, embryonal tumors, meningothelial, and other mesenchymal tumors have important genetic alterations, many of which are diagnostic, prognostic, and predictive markers and therapeutic targets. Therefore, the neuropathological evaluation of brain tumors is increasingly dependent on molecular genetic tests for proper classification, prediction of biological behavior and patient management. Identifying these gene abnormalities requires cost-effective and high-throughput testing, such as next-generation sequencing. Overall, this paper reviews the global guidelines and diagnostic algorithms for molecular genetic testing of brain tumors.

Key Words: Brain neoplasms; Molecular biology; Next generation sequencing; Pathological diagnosis

The central nervous system (CNS) tumors are those of the brain and spinal cord including the meninges, pituitary gland, pineal gland, and nerves according to the 3rd edition of the International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-O-3) (http://codes.iarc.fr/). The incidence rate of all primary malignant and nonmalignant CNS tumors in the United States was 22.36 cases per 100,000 (5.67/100,000 for 0–14 years, 5.71/100,000 for 0–19 years) according to the U.S. Central Brain Tumor Registry (CBTRUS; http://www.cbtrus.org/factsheet/factsheet.html). The proportion of women with CNS tumors is lower than that of men (1.2:1). In the United States, the number of newly diagnosed primary malignant and nonmalignant CNS tumors is expected to reach 79,270 (26,070 cases of primary malignant and 53,200 cases of nonmalignant tumors) by 2017. The average annual mortality rate in the United States between 2009 and 2013 is 4.32 per 100,000 and with 73,450 deaths attributed to primary malignant brain and other CNS tumors. If we extrapolate the U.S. data with its incidence rate to the Korean population, per year we would expect about 12,500 new cases of primary CNS tumors and 2,160 deaths. According to the nationwide cancer registration (hospital based Korean Central Cancer Registry [KCCR], http://www.iacr.com.fr/index.php?option=com_comprofiler&task=userprofile&user=973&Itemid=498, http://ncc.re.kr/cancerStatsView.ncc?bbsnum=358&searchKey=total&searchValue=&pageNum=1), 10,004 patients were diagnosed with primary CNS tumors in Korea in 2010, which means that the incidence of brain tumors in Korea is lower than that of United States. Similar to the United States, CNS tumors occurred more frequently in female (female: male, 1.59:1). The four most common tumors were meningioma (55.5%), pituitary tumors (18.7%), gliomas (15.1%), and nerve sheath tumors (10.3%). Glioblastoma (GBM) is the most common and the most malignant glioma, which comprises 34.6% of all gliomas. In children (0–19 years), se...
The completion of the human genome project led to two powerful tools: the human genome sequence and advanced molecular technologies. Over the past few decades, investigators have been constantly searching for causes of cancer. Through high-throughput studies such as the Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA) project (https://cancergenome.nih.gov/) or the cBioPortal project (http://www.cbioportal.org/), a large number of brain tumors have been sequenced and major genetic alterations in brain tumors have been identified, thus allowing for the classification of gliomas. The signaling pathways that are mainly involved in GBM are RTK/RAS/phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K) signaling, p53 signaling, and Rb signaling, which were identified through analyses of common mutations and copy number variations (CNV) in gliomas. In addition, according to the molecular classification by global mRNA expression and DNA methylation, GBMs can be categorized into neural, pro-neural, classical, and mesenchymal transcriptomic subtypes.

One of the most prominent molecular discoveries was made in 2008 in the genomics of diffuse gliomas. Mutations in IDH1 and IDH2 were discovered by whole exome sequencing (WES) of GBMs, thus altering the classification of gliomas. IDH1 or IDH2 mutations are found in both astrocytic and oligodendrogial tumors since they act as a starting point for gliomagenesis. Therefore, the 2016 World Health Organization (WHO) classification guidelines combined astrocytic tumors and oligodendrogial tumors into one category. Furthermore, each tumor has a typical genetic signature. For example, oligodendrogliomas are characterized by a codeletion in 1p/19q, mutations in IDH, and the promoter region of the gene encoding telomerase reverse transcriptase (TERT)p. Furthermore, grade 2 and grade 3 astrocytic tumors are characterized by ATRX and TP53 mutations, while IDH-wildtype (primary) GBMs are characterized by the CNV of EGFR, PTEN, CDKN2A/B, PDGFRA, and MET genes, in addition to a lack of mutations in IDH and a codeletion in 1p/19q.

Even in tumors that are morphologically similar, those with mutations in IDH1 and a codeletion in 1p/19q differ in the treatment response and prognosis compared with tumors without these two molecular alterations. Since only gliomas with mutations in IDH and a codeletion in 1p/19q are considered oligodendroglialomas, the so-called pediatric-type oligodendroglia lacking these two alterations is not considered an oligodendroglialoma. The molecular differences of primary IDH-wildtype and IDH-mutant (secondary) GBMs are well summarized in the paper by Cachia et al. The genetic abnormalities of the IDH-mutant GBMs are similar to grade II/III astrocytomas. In other words, they more likely have mutations in IDH, ATRX, and TP53.

Since the prognosis of each tumor depends on the mutational status of IDH1 and IDH2, astrocytic tumors are also classified according to this metric (Fig. 1). Pediatric GBMs and high-grade gliomas differ from those of adults. No genetic abnormalities in IDH1 and IDH2 are found in pediatric GBMs, but mutations are generally found in H3F3A, ATRX, and DAXX (Fig. 2). The K27M in H3F3A is a major mutation found in diffuse midline gliomas. Additionally, a C11orf95-RELA fusion was found in supratentorial ependymomas. A V600E mutation in BRAF was found in circumscribed gliomas, such as pleomorphic xanthoastrocytoma (PXA) (66%), and gangliogliomas (25%), and pilocytic astrocytomas (15%). Furthermore, a BRAF-TIAA1549 fusion was discovered in pilocytic astrocytoma (more than 70%) (Fig. 2). SMARCB1 (INI1) or SMARCA4 (BRG1) gene mutations or deletions were observed in atypical teratoid/rhabdoid tumors (AT/RT), and a NAB2-STAT6 fusion was present in solitary fibrous tumor/hemangiopericytoma. Meningiomas also have typical gene mutations according to the tumor type and grade. Sixty percent of the sporadic meningiomas have mutations in TRAF7, KLF4, AKT1, SM0, and PIK3CA. Among them, mutations in TRAF7 and KLF4 are found in secretory-type meningiomas and mutations in TRAF7/AKT1/PIK3CA are found in meningothelial and transitional-type meningiomas. Mutations in TRAF7 are the most common genomic aberrations and are found in 12%–15% of sporadic meningiomas, preferentially fibrous and transitional subtype, which are found concurrently with mutations in KLF4, AKT1, or PIK3CA, but are mutually exclusive with mutations in SM0 and neurofibromatosis type 2 (NF2). NF2-associated meningiomas have mutations in NF2. Atypical and anaplastic meningiomas usually have mutations in TERTp or marked copy number aberrations and loss of CDKN2A/2B.
These findings demonstrate that tumors are genetic disorders and that certain mutations can represent different biological behaviors and result in different prognoses.

Molecular testing, such as molecular profiling of brain tumors, improves diagnostic accuracy, allows for predictive prognosis, and enables target identification. At present, target therapy has become one of the most promising treatment options for many tumors. Here, we summarize and provide guidelines for the molecular testing of brain tumors. High-throughput genomic studies, such as next-generation sequencing (NGS), can be useful financially and practically by rapidly replacing time-consuming and labor-intensive conventional methods since multiple molecular genetic abnormalities must be studied in order to diagnose various brain tumors.

### IMPORTANT MOLECULAR GENETICS FOUND IN BRAIN TUMORS

The indications and methods of each genetic study common to brain tumors are summarized in Tables 1–6. Integration of morphological criteria and genetic alterations is the guideline for an accurate diagnosis, risk classification, and development of therapeutic strategies.

#### Mutations in IDH1/2

The discovery of mutations affecting the enzymatic function of IDH in gliomas provided a fundamentally new insight into the biology of gliomagenesis and triggered molecular classification of gliomas by a somatic mutation. IDH catalyzes the oxidative decarboxylation of isocitrate to produce α-ketoglutarate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WHO grade</th>
<th>Altered genes</th>
<th>Genomic alteration (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Astrocytoma II, III</td>
<td>IDH mutation</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glioblastoma IV</td>
<td>EGFR amplification</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PDGFRα amplification</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EGFRvIII mutation</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PTEN homozygous deletion</td>
<td>25–35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CDKN2A homozygous deletion</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BRAF V600E mutation</td>
<td>1–2 (epithelioid GBM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TP53 mutation</td>
<td>25–35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oligodendroglioma II, III</td>
<td>IDH mutation</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1p/19q codeletion</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CIC/FUBP1 mutation</td>
<td>56/29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TERTp mutation</td>
<td>80–96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subependymal giant cell astrocytoma I</td>
<td>TSC1 and TSC2 mutation</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pilocytic astrocytoma I</td>
<td>BRAF-KIAA1549 fusion</td>
<td>75 (cerebellar tumor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BRAF V600E mutation</td>
<td>13–15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pleomorphic xanthoastrocytoma II, III</td>
<td>BRAF V600E mutation</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CDKN2A homozygous deletion</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angiocentric glioma I</td>
<td>MYB-QKI fusion</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ganglioglioma I, III</td>
<td>BRAF V600E mutation</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TSC1 and TSC2 mutation</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SMARCB1 deletion/mutation</td>
<td>&gt;95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SMARCA4 mutation</td>
<td>&lt;5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cribriform tumor</td>
<td>SMARCB1 deletion/mutation</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meningioma, fibrous type</td>
<td>NF2 inactivation mutation (no hot spot)</td>
<td>45–65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TRAF7/KLF4 mutation</td>
<td>100 (secretory meningioma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AKT1 (p.Glu17Lys) mutation</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SMO (p.Trp535Leu) mutation</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TERTp mutation</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Langerhans cell histiocytosis I, III</td>
<td>BRAF V600E mutation</td>
<td>50–57</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WHO, World Health Organization; GBM, glioblastoma; TSC, tuberous sclerosis complex; AT/RT, atypical teratoid/rhabdoid tumor.
(α-KG) and CO2, but mutant IDH1/2 has a preferential affinity for α-KG instead of isocitrate outside of the citric acid cycle, thus leading to the production and accumulation of the oncometabolite 2-hydroxyglutarate (2HG). Dang et al. hypothesized that 2HG induces redox stress due to damage to the respiratory chain, which subsequently promotes the mutagenesis and development of gliomas. The α-KG–dependent prolyl hydroxylases modulate HIF1α levels and changes in the HIF1α downstream pathway, leading to an increase in reactive oxygen species levels and potentially contributing to the risk of cancer.

The glioma-CpG island methylator phenotype (G-CIMP) subset is distinctively and invariably found in the gliomas with mutant IDH, which is the proneural transcriptional group. 2HG, the oncometabolite produced by mutant IDH1/2, inhibits α-KG–dependent dioxygenases including histone demethylases and the Ten-Eleven Translocation (TET) family of histone 5-methylcytosine hydroxylase, which directly induce the hypermethylated state. The G-CIMP subgroup of GBMs is common in younger patients and has a longer lifespan.

All IDH1/2 mutations are common in 70%–80% of type II and III infiltrating gliomas and are found in 100% of oligodendroglialomas and IDH-mutant GBMs.

TP53 mutation

TP53 is a typical tumor suppressor gene located in 17p13.1, which encodes the nuclear protein p53. The p53 protein responds to diverse cellular stresses to regulate the expression of its target genes, thereby inducing cell cycle arrest, apoptosis, senescence, DNA repair, or metabolic changes. Mutated TP53 genes and overexpressed abnormal p53 protein, which has a longer half-life than wild type p53, are associated with a variety of human cancers, including Li-Fraumeni syndrome and many hereditary gliomas. As mentioned in the introduction, the p53 signaling pathway is one of the major abrogated pathways of astrocytic tumors including GBMs. WHO class II and III astrocytic tumors show high levels of TP53 mutations (94%) and/or p53 overexpression (Tables 3, 4). However, these alterations are rare in oligodendroglialomas, well-circumscribed astrocytic tumors including pilocytic astrocytomas, pleomorphic xanthoastrocytomas, and subependymal giant cell astrocytomas, ependymomas, and embryonal tumors such as medulloblastoma, except for the SHH-type, p53-activated subgroup.

Table 2. Common pediatric molecular subgroups with molecular features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumor</th>
<th>Molecular subgroup</th>
<th>Molecular feature</th>
<th>Prognosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LGG</td>
<td>BRAF V600E</td>
<td>70% of PXA, GG, DA</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>KIAA–BRAF fusion; BRAF duplication</td>
<td>90% of PA</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MYB–KIX rearrangement</td>
<td>High proportion of AG</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FGFR1 duplication</td>
<td>PA, DA, DNT</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HGG</td>
<td>K27M-mutant</td>
<td>H3.1 and H3.3 K27 mutation, PDGFRA focal amplification, TP53 mutation, ACVR1 mutation</td>
<td>Poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G34RV-mutant</td>
<td>H3.3 G3 and TP53 mutation</td>
<td>Poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RTK1 amplified</td>
<td>PDGFRA and EGFR focal amplification, CDKN2A/2B homozygous deletion</td>
<td>Poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mesenchymal</td>
<td>NPM mutation, PDGFRA and EGFR focal amplification, CDKN2A/2B homozygous deletion</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ependymoma</td>
<td>C11orf95-RELA+ (70% of ST E)</td>
<td>RELA fusion transcripts</td>
<td>Poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RELA fusion – (30% of ST E)</td>
<td>Possibly YAP1 fusion transcripts</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior fossa E</td>
<td>Group A: LAMA2 overexpression, Group B: NELL2 overexpression</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord E</td>
<td>(10% of child E)</td>
<td>NFI2 mutation, myxopapillary histology</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medulloblastoma</td>
<td>WNT (10%)</td>
<td>Nuclear β-catenin positive, C7N9N8 mutations in exon 3, monosomy 6</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SHH (30%)</td>
<td>Heterogeneous molecular features depending on age of presentation; Pitch1, Smo, and SUFU mutations, GLI2 and MYCN amplification; germine TP53 mutations</td>
<td>Intermediate (except in infants who have a good prognosis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Group 3 (25%)</td>
<td>By some unknown mechanism; MYC amplification and over expression</td>
<td>Poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Group 4 (35%)</td>
<td>i(17q); MYCN amplification</td>
<td>Intermediate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT/RT</td>
<td>SMARCB1/SHARCA4 mutation</td>
<td>Poor</td>
<td>Poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETMR</td>
<td>C19MC amplification</td>
<td>Poor</td>
<td>Poor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LGG, low grade glioma; PXA, pleomorphic xanthoastrocytoma; GG, ganglioglioma; DA, diffuse astrocytoma; PA, pilocytic astrocytoma; AG, angioiocentric glioma; DNT, dysembryoplastic neuroepithelial tumor; HGG, high grade glioma; ST, supratentorial; PF, posterior fossa; E, ependymoma; WNT, wingless signaling pathway; i, isochromosome; AT/RT, atypical teratoid/rhabdoid tumor; ETMR, embryonal tumor with multilayer rosettes.
ATRX is an X-linked gene of α-thalassemia and mental retardation syndrome

ATRX is located in Xq21.1, encodes a 280-kDa nuclear protein, and has been shown to be involved in a wide range of cellular functions such as DNA recombination, repair, and transcription regulation.8 It binds strongly within the promyelocytic leukemia body of the nucleus. When ATRX interacts with DAXX, this complex functions as a histone chaperone complex for the deposition of histone variant H3.3 into heterochromatic repeats including pericentric, telomeric, and ribosomal DNA repeat sequences.85 Functional mutations of this gene have been associated with sister chromatid clumps and defects, abnormal DNA methylation, and the maintenance of telomerase-independent telomeres, resulting in an alternative lengthening of telomeres (ALT). Decreased nuclear expression of ATRX and ATRX mutations are observed in grade 2 and 3 astrocytic tumors including IDH mutant gliomas (86%), IDH-mutant GBMs (85%), and pediatric high grade gliomas such as diffuse midline

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genes and molecules</th>
<th>Biomarker type</th>
<th>PA (%)</th>
<th>PXA (%)</th>
<th>DA/AA (%)</th>
<th>IDH- wildtype GBM (%)</th>
<th>IDH- mutant GBM (%)</th>
<th>DMG, H3 K27M (%)</th>
<th>ODG (%)</th>
<th>Epen (%)</th>
<th>MB (%)</th>
<th>AT/RT (%)</th>
<th>Test method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WHO grade</td>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>II, III</td>
<td>II, III</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>II/III</td>
<td>II/III</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDH1 mutation</td>
<td>Diagnostic and prognostic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>&gt;80</td>
<td>5-6</td>
<td>&gt;95</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>IHC, sequencing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDH2 mutation</td>
<td>Diagnostic and prognostic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td>2-6</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Sequencing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TP53 mutation</td>
<td>Diagnostic and prognostic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>25-35</td>
<td>62-65</td>
<td>45-50</td>
<td>9-44</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Sequencing, IHC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATRX mutation</td>
<td>Diagnostic and prognostic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>90-95</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>IHC, sequencing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histone K27M mutation</td>
<td>Diagnostic and prognostic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>IHC, sequencing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histone G34 mutation</td>
<td>Diagnostic and prognostic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Sequencing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histone K36 mutation</td>
<td>Diagnostic and prognostic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Sequencing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1p/19q codeletion</td>
<td>Diagnostic, prognostic, and predictive</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>FISH, CGH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CIC mutation</td>
<td>Diagnostic, prognostic, and predictive</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Sequencing, IHC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUBP1 mutation</td>
<td>Diagnostic, prognostic, and predictive</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Sequencing, IHC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGFR amp</td>
<td>Prognostic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>35-45</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>FISH, CGH, IHC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDGFRa amp</td>
<td>Diagnostic</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>FISH, CGH, IHC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTEN H0D</td>
<td>Prognostic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>25-35</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>FISH, CGH, IHC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDKN2A/2a H0D</td>
<td>Prognostic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>35-50</td>
<td>&lt;5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Sequencing, IHC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRAF V600E mutation</td>
<td>Prognostic</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Sequencing, IHC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRAF-KIAA1549 fusion</td>
<td>Prognostic</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>RT-PCR, FISH (gain)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TERT promoter mutation</td>
<td>Prognostic</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>&gt;80</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Sequencing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C11orf95-RELA fusion</td>
<td>Prognostic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>&lt;5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>RT-PCR, IHC, RNA seq</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β-Catenin mutation</td>
<td>Prognostic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6-9</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>IHC, sequencing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MYC amp</td>
<td>Prognostic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10-15</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>FISH, CGH, IHC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MYCN amp</td>
<td>Prognostic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10-15</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>FISH, CGH, IHC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMARCBL1 mutation</td>
<td>Diagnostic and prognostic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>IHC, sequencing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMARCA4 mutation</td>
<td>Diagnostic and prognostic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>IHC, sequencing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MGMT methylation</td>
<td>Predictive</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>78.5</td>
<td>48.5</td>
<td>60-80</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>MSP-PCR, pyrosequencing, IHC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PA, pilocytic astrocytoma; PXA, pleomorphic xanthoastrocytoma; DA, diffuse astrocytoma; AA, anaplastic astrocytoma; GBM, glioblastoma; DMG, diffuse midline glioma; HGG, high grade glioma; ODG, oligodendroglioma; MB, medulloblastomas; AT/RT, atypical teratoid/rhabdoid tumor; WHO, World Health Organization; IHC, immunohistochemistry; FISH, fluorescent in situ hybridization; CGH, comparative genomic hybridization; RT-PCR, reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction; -, not known; MSP-PCR, methylation-specific polymerase chain reaction.
gliomas (DMGs) (Figs. 1, 2).3

Histone H3F3A (K27M, K36, and G34) mutations

Histone protein H3.1 and H3.2 are expressed only in the S phase and are integrated into the chromatin by chaperone CAF1 during DNA replication only, but H3.3 is expressed at all stages of the cell cycle and can be integrated into the chromatin independently of DNA replication. H3.3 is associated with active chromatin such as H3K4 trimethylation, which promotes open chromatin structure for the binding of co-factors and transcription factors to activate transcription.85 Recurrent mutations in H3F3A, which encodes the replication-independent histone 3 variant H3.3, were first detected in the pediatric diffuse infiltrating pontine glioma (DIPG) by a comprehensive WES analysis. DIPG was later renamed as DMG and is considered a H3K27M mutation in the new 2016 WHO classification (Fig. 2).7,23 Eighty percent of pontine gliomas (DIPG) and 70% of other loci DMGs contain a mutation in one allele of the H3F3A gene, which is a mutation on the histone tail (K27M, K36, G34R/G34V), an important post-translational modification factor.22

The histone H3F3A mutant gliomas have a poor prognosis regardless of histopathological grade. K27M-H3.3 mutations occur mainly in young patients (median age, 11 years) and G34R/V-H3.3 mutations occur in older children and young adults (median age, 20 years).22 All of the cases with G34-H3.3 mutations are in pediatric GBMs (13/13), and especially associated with mutations in ATRX and DAXX.22 Loss of ATRX is associated with the ALT phenotype; thus, ALT often coexists with mutations in ATRX/H3F3A/TP53.22

Codeletion of chromosome 1p/19q and mutations in CIC and FUBP1

Simultaneous deletion of chromosome 1p/19q is a characteristic and early genetic event in oligodendrogliomas, which is associated with better prognosis and is also a good indicator of the patient response to specific combination chemotherapy of procarbazine, lomustine, and vincristine (PCV). Recurrent mutations in CIC and FUBP1 were found in 46%–53% and 15%–24% of oligodendrogliomas, respectively, in addition to a codeletion in 1p/19q and mutations in IDH1 or IDH2 (Fig. 1).86-88 FUBP1 is located in 1p31.1, and mutations in FUBP1 are predicted to disrupt FUBP1 protein function (Table 1).
acts as an RNA binding protein and alterations of its normal function can lead to tumorigenesis, which has been suggested to act either as a protooncogene or a tumor suppressor gene depending on the tumor type. The c-Myc pathway, \textit{FUBP1} promotes cell migration and protects cells from apoptosis.

The \textit{CIC} gene on chromosome 19q13.2 represses genes induced by RTK pathway activation.\textsuperscript{36,87} Although the function of human \textit{CIC} protein is not known, a recent study in cultured cells demonstrated that \textit{CIC} acts together with \textit{IDH1} to regulate citrate levels in the cytoplasm. \textit{CIC} mutations promote the accumulation of 2HG and reduce clonogenicity in the setting of \textit{IDH1} mutations. Loss of 19q in oligodendrogial tumors un-masks mutations in the \textit{CIC} gene.\textsuperscript{87,90} In this regard, the coexistence of \textit{IDH1} with \textit{CIC} or \textit{FUBP1} mutations may partially

Table 5. The current sequencing conditions commonly used for brain tumor diagnosis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Full name</th>
<th>Gene location</th>
<th>Forward primer</th>
<th>Reverse primer</th>
<th>Product (bp)</th>
<th>Indication</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IDH1</td>
<td>Isocitrate dehydrogenase 1</td>
<td>2q33.3</td>
<td>5'-M13-GTA AAA CCA GCG CCA GTC GGT</td>
<td>5'-GAT AAT TTC ACA CAG GGC AAA AAT ACA TTA TTG</td>
<td>180–190</td>
<td>Astrocytic and ODG</td>
<td>Affect citrate metabolism, leading to 2-HG metabolite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDH2</td>
<td>Isocitrate dehydrogenase 2</td>
<td>15q26.1</td>
<td>5'-GCT GCA GTG GGA CCA GTA TT-3'</td>
<td>5'-GCC GGC GTT GTA CGT CAG AG-3'</td>
<td>295–305</td>
<td>Astrocytic and ODG</td>
<td>Same with IDH1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3F3A</td>
<td>Histone family 3A</td>
<td>1q21.12</td>
<td>5'-CTG GTA AAG CAC CCA GGA ACC-3'</td>
<td>5'-CAT GGA TAG CAC ACA GGT TGG T-3'</td>
<td>330–340</td>
<td>DMG</td>
<td>Chromatin structure, gene transcription</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRAF V600E</td>
<td>V-RAF murine sarcoma viral oncogene homolog B1</td>
<td>7q34</td>
<td>1st: 5'-GCT TGC TCT GAT AGG AAA ATG AG-3'</td>
<td>2nd: 5'-TCA TAA TGC TTG CTC TGA TAG GA-3'</td>
<td>245–255</td>
<td>Giomas including PXA, GG, PA, epithelioid GBM</td>
<td>MAPK signaling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTNNB1</td>
<td>Catenin, beta-1</td>
<td>3p22.1</td>
<td>5'-GAT TTG ATG GAG TTG GAC ATG G-3'</td>
<td>5'-TGT TCT TGA GTG AAG GAC TGA G-3'</td>
<td>230–235</td>
<td>Medulloblastoma, WNT subtype, craniopharyngioma, adamantinomatous type</td>
<td>The transmission of the ‘contact inhibition’ signal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TERTp</td>
<td>Telomerase reverse transcriptase</td>
<td>5p15.33</td>
<td>5'-M13-GGC CGA TTC GAC CCA TTC TCT-3' (M13: TGT AAA ACG AGC GCC AGT)</td>
<td>5'-GCC CAA AAA TTT AAC TAC TGG A-3'</td>
<td>300–310</td>
<td>Giomas, especially ODG and GBM</td>
<td>Telomerase maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MGMT</td>
<td>O6-menthylguanine-DNA methyltransferase</td>
<td>10q26.3</td>
<td>5'-TTT CGA CGT TCG TAG GTT TTC GC-3'</td>
<td>5'-GCA CTC TTC CGA AAA CCA AAC G-3'</td>
<td>80–90</td>
<td>Giomas</td>
<td>Promoter methylation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6. Probes and reading criteria of FISH studies used for brain tumor diagnosis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target probe</th>
<th>Control</th>
<th>Cut off</th>
<th>Indication</th>
<th>Biomarker</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1p deletion</td>
<td>Chr1p36</td>
<td>1q25</td>
<td>1p&lt;0.8 and Deleted nuclei &gt;50%</td>
<td>ODG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19q deletion</td>
<td>Chr19q13</td>
<td>19p13</td>
<td>19q&lt;0.8 and Deleted nuclei &gt;50%</td>
<td>ODG, HGG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRAF gain</td>
<td>Chr7q34</td>
<td>CEP7</td>
<td>Gold signal &gt;3</td>
<td>PA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDKN2A (9p21.3) homozygous/hemizygous deletion</td>
<td>Chr9p21.3</td>
<td>CEP9</td>
<td>HoD ≥10% HeD ≥50%</td>
<td>HGG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGFR amplification</td>
<td>Chr7q11.2</td>
<td>CEP7</td>
<td>Ratio ≥2.0</td>
<td>HGG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTEN HoD/HeD</td>
<td>Chr10q23.31</td>
<td>CEP10</td>
<td>HoD ≥10% HeD ≥50%</td>
<td>HGG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RELA-C11orf95 fusion</td>
<td>Chr19q13.1</td>
<td>CEP11</td>
<td>Break apart</td>
<td>S-ependymoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C19MC amplification</td>
<td>Chr19</td>
<td>CEP19</td>
<td>Ratio ≥2.0</td>
<td>ODG, GBM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMARCB1</td>
<td>Chr22q11.23</td>
<td>CEP22</td>
<td>NF2 &lt;0.8</td>
<td>AT/RT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FISH: fluorescent in situ hybridization; Chr, chromosome; ODG, oligodendroglioma; HGG, high grade glioma; PA, pilocytic astrocytoma; GBM, glioblastoma; MAPK, mitogen-activated protein kinase.
explain the slower tumor growth and longer survival of oligodendrogliomas with mutations in IDH1 and a codeletion of 1p/19q when compared to other diffuse gliomas. The overall survival rate of patients with oligodendrogliomas with CIC mutations was lower than that of patients without CIC mutations, and the FUBP1 mutation was significantly associated with unfavorable progression-free survival. However, oligodendrogliomas cannot be diagnosed with CIC or FUBP1 mutations only.

**EGFR amplification and EGFRvIII truncation mutations**

EGFR, also called Erb1 or HER1, is located on chromosome 7q12 and acts as an ErbB family receptor tyrosine kinase. EGFR amplification is closely related to EGFR overexpression. EGFRvIII-positive tumor cells exhibit particularly high levels of mTOR signal and exhibit the most proliferative and aggressive phenotype similar to GBMs (Fig. 1). The EGFRvIII mutation is a 801 bp frame deletion from exons 2 to 7 of the EGFR gene, which is associated with EGFR amplification and the response to antibody therapy as well as poor prognosis. In addition to EGFR amplification, EGFRvIII-positive GBM cell lines are sensitively suppressed by first-generation EGFR inhibitors (erlotinib, gefitinib, vandetanib) and second-generation EGFR inhibitors (NT113) as compared to GBM cell lines in which PTEN tumor suppressor genes are lost in vitro.

EGFR immunohistochemistry is usually uniform in tumors expressing high levels of the protein, however, EGFRvIII staining is heterogeneous and usually present in only a subset of tumor cells. Therefore, representative sampling of tumor tissue is important to avoid false-negative results.

Unlike EGFR point mutations, EGFR fusions with SEPT14, PSPH, or SEC61G has also been shown to play a role in GBMs, offering a unique opportunity to investigate fused oncogene dependencies.

**Deletions in CDKN2A/2B**

CDKN2A/2B is a tumor suppressor gene located on chromosome 9p21.3, because it encodes a cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor (p16) and is a cell cycle regulator of the Rb pathway. In 60% of GBMs and 11% of low-grade gliomas including oligodendroglioma, pleomorphic xanthoastrocytoma, and pilocytic astrocytoma, the loss or inactivation of p16 protein as a result of a homozygous deletion or promoter methylation of CDKN2A/2B is observed (Fig. 1). It is also one of the more commonly altered genes in PXA and high grade gliomas in both adults and children (Fig. 2). After adjusting for the IDH mutational status, sex, and age, CDKN2A deletions were strongly associated with poorer overall survival in astrocytomas but not in oligodendrogliomas.

---

**Fig. 1.** Schematic view of the classification of adult diffuse glioma according to the status of key genes.
BRAF mutations and BRAF-KIAA1549 fusions

BRAF V600E mutations and fusions of BRAF with KIAA1549 or FAM131B are characteristics of pilocytic astrocytomas. In 2008, a tandem duplication was confirmed in 7q34, and a new fusion gene was found to be generated by a fusion between the KIAA1549 gene and BRAF genes, which was previously uncharacterized in pilocytic astrocytomas. Fusions between KIAA1549 exon 15 and BRAF exon 9 and those between FAM131B exon 2 and BRAF exon 9 are derived from a 2.0 Mb tandem duplication in chromosome band 7q34, which can be detected by real-time polymerase chain reaction (PCR) or fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH) (Fig. 2).

The BRAF V600E mutation was found in two-thirds of all pleomorphic xanthoastrocytomas, one-fourth of gangliogliomas, and one-seventh of pilocytic astrocytomas. In children, CDKN2A deletions and BRAF mutations are early events in low-grade gliomas (pediatric low-grade glioma [PLGG]) undergoing malignant transformation (Fig. 2). The BRAF V600E mutant PLGG has longer transformation latency periods than the BRAF wild type PLGG (median latency period, 6.65 years vs 1.59 years, respectively). As a result, all of the patients with secondary high-grade glioma (sHGGs) containing mutant BRAF were diagnosed at age 9 or older. The sHGG in children showed recurrent changes of BRAF V600E mutations and CDKN2A deletions in 39% and 57%, respectively.

TERTp mutations

Human telomerase is a ribonucleoprotein that regulates the length of telomeric DNA at the ends of chromosomes; therefore, it plays an important role in cellular immortalization and oncogenesis. Mutations in TERTp are molecular hallmarks of glioma, occurring in more than 80%–96% of IDH-wildtype GBMs and oligodendrogliomas, but less frequently present in grade II and III astrocytomas (38.5%) (Table 1, Fig. 1). Chan et al. (2015) found that mutations in TERTp are present in 41 of 142 (28.9%) grade II gliomas and 20 of 72 (27.8%) grade III gliomas. The mutations were always found in two hotspots (chr5: 1 295 228 C > T and 1 295 250 C > T), resulting in a somatic gain-of-function mutation and an enhancement of TERTp activity. A relative telomere length is strongly correlated with TERTp mutations. These two hot spot mutations are mutually exclusive in gliomas and TP53 mutations, but coincident with...
The prognostic effect of the TERTp mutation is controversial. Some studies have suggested that TERTp mutations in low-grade gliomas are associated with shorter progression-free survival. Other researchers have found that TERTp mutations are a predictor of a poorer response to temozolomide. TERTp mutations are associated with good outcome in gliomas with mutant IDH, but it is also related to poor outcome in gliomas with wild type IDH. In gliomas with wildtype IDH or GBMs with hypomethylated MGMT, TERTp mutations were found to predict poor prognosis. Therefore, when using the TERTp mutational status as a prognostic factor, other factors such as mutations in IDH and tumor grade should be considered. Primer sequences for TERTp mutation is summarized in Table 5.

**C11orf95-RELA fusion**

More than two-thirds of supratentorial ependymomas contain oncogenic fusions between RELA (the principle effector of canonical nuclear factor κB [NF-κB] signaling) and C11orf95 (an uncharacterized gene) (Table 2). Ependymomas carrying the C11orf95-RELA fusion are characterized by a nuclear accumulation of p65RelA (NFkB) indicating a pathological activation of the NFkB signaling pathway. C11orf95-RELA fusions result from chromothripsis involving chromosome 11q13.1. Furthermore, the C11orf95-RELA fusion protein was found to spontaneously translate to the nucleus to activate NF-κB target genes, and to rapidly transform neural stem cells, the cell of origin for ependymomas, to form these tumors in mice, which is a poor prognostic marker (Table 2).

**CTNNB1 mutations**

Mutations in CTNNB1 on chromosome 3p21, which encodes β-catenin, promote the stabilization and nuclear translocation of itself, therefore activating the WNT signaling pathway (Table 2). The nuclear translocation of β-catenin is present in medulloblastomas, solitary fibrous tumors/hemangiopericytomas, and adamantinomatous-type craniopharyngiomas. Nuclear expression of β-catenin is always focal. Overall, these mutations can act as future therapeutic targets in nuclear β-catenin–positive tumors.

**MYC and MYCN amplification**

MYC is a regulator gene that encodes for transcription factors for c-myc, Mync, and Mycl. Nuclear myc protein has multiple functions such as cell cycle progression, apoptosis, and cellular transformation. MYC/MYCN amplification or overexpression is found not only in type-3 medulloblastomas, but also in other aggressive subtypes of medulloblastomas, which account for approximately 10% of medulloblastomas.

**SMARCB1 and SMARCA4 mutations**

AT/RT are highly malignant CNS embryonal tumors with rhabdoid morphology, where biallelic inactivation of SMARCB1 results in a loss of INI1 (BAF47) nuclear expression (Tables 2–4). The loss of BRG1 nuclear expression in AT/RT with mutations in SMARCA4 is rarely reported. The tumor suppressors SMARCB1 and SMARCA4 are located on 22q11.23 and 19p13.2, respectively. The biallelic loss of SMARCB1 and SMARCA4 can be recognized by nuclear negativity of the INI1 and BRG1 immunostaining. However, FISH and DNA sequencing can also be used to detect these genetic alterations. WES and RNA sequencing of AT/RT revealed few somatic mutations and several deregulated signaling pathways related to the SMARCB1 deficiency.

**C19MC amplification**

Chromosomal 19 micro-ribosomal clusters (C19MC), localized at 19q13.42, are produced by chromothripsis, a phenomenon of chromosomal breakage and inaccurate recombination, resulting in the rearrangement of thousands of clustered chromosomes in a single event to a localized and restricted genomic region on one or more chromosomes. C19MC amplification is a genetic feature of embryonal tumors with multilayer rosettes (ETMR), supratentorial ependymomas, and medulloepitheliomas (Table 2). This abnormality can be detected by FISH.

**MGMT promoter hypermethylation**

One of the most clinically important DNA methylation markers in GBMs is the promoter of MGMT, a DNA repair enzyme that can abrogate the effects of alkylating chemotherapy such as temozolomide. More than 50% of oligodendrogliomas and 30%–40% of adult high-grade gliomas (approximately 40% of IDH-wildtype GBMs) reveal MGMT methylation. MGMT promoter hypermethylation induces gene silencing and susceptibility to combined temozolomide and radiation therapy. In cases of oligodendroglioma with promoter methylation of the MGMT gene, whether or not PCV chemotherapy is advantageous remains controversial. However, it is still considered to be the most accurate predictive factor for survival during PCV chemotherapy.
METHODS OF MOLECULAR TESTING

The molecular testing methods commonly used in pathology laboratories include immunohistochemical staining, direct sequencing, FISH, chromosomal genomic hybridization, and NGS.

Immunohistochemical studies

Some of the genetic changes can be detected by immunohistochemical studies. IDH R132H, H3 K27M, BRAF V600E, and EGFRvIII can be diagnosed using mutation-specific monoclonal antibodies (mAbs). IDH1 (H09), K27M, and BRAF VE1 antibodies have 100% sensitivity and specificity to detect gene mutations.66 The INI-1 (SMARCB1), BRG1 (SMARCA4), p16 (CDKN2A), CIC, and FUBP1 mutations and MGMT methylation can be detected by the loss of expression. TP53 mutations are detected by the complete loss of expression or overexpression via the stabilization of the mutant protein. In addition, STAT6 (NAB2-STAT6 fusion), L1CAM (protein marker for RELA-9ORF95 fusion), and the amplifications of EGFR, MET, and PDGFR can be analyzed by overexpression assays (Table 4).21,24,36,55 Mutations in several genes give rise to the overexpression or loss of proteins, depending on whether the mutation is a gain of function or a loss of function mutation, respectively. For example, p53 nuclear overexpression reflects a TP53 mutation, and p16 nuclear and cytoplasmic losses are associated with a CDKN2A homozygous deletion. Furthermore, the nuclear loss of ATRX is associated with an ATRX mutation, and MLH1, MSH2, and PMS nuclear losses are associated with methylation of these genes. Among these, all but TP53 have high correlations between immunohistochemical results and molecular genetic studies. The correlation rate of p53 between immunohistochemistry and mutation studies is low. This is because p53 immunoreactivity may have resulted from the prolongation of half-life either due to p53 mutations or the accumulation of wild type protein brought about by mechanisms other than those caused by mutations, such as a complex formation with MDM2 overexpression products,109 whereas p53 negativity can be observed by the methylation of the TP53 promoter. Therefore, overexpression of p53 protein is not always associated with mutations in conserved exons of the p53 gene.

Direct sequencing

The rapidly growing number of prognostic and predictive genetic markers in neuro-oncology has led to an increasing need for a more thorough molecular analysis of brain tumor specimens in a modern pathology setting. Although several diagnostically important mutations can be detected by immunohistochemistry, this is not the case for the full spectrum of alterations now known to be of relevance. Therefore, the mutations of IDH 1/2, BRAF, CTNNB1, H3F3A (K27M, G34), TP53, ATRX, and TERTp are usually detected by direct sequencing. The sequencing conditions, primer sequences, and PCR product sizes that are currently being used for brain tumor diagnosis are summarized in Table 5.

In order to detect mutations in CIC (missense mutations or small in-frame deletions) and FUBP1 (indel, splicing alteration, and nonsense mutations) in the functional regions such as the HMG box and CI motif, NGS is required because the mutation sites of these two genes are widely distributed along the coding regions.88

Sanger sequencing is a method of DNA sequencing based on the selective incorporation of chain-terminating deoxynucleotides by DNA polymerase during DNA replication in vitro, which was developed by Frederick Sanger and colleagues in 1977.91

Recently, one-step Sanger sequencing (combining the amplification and sequencing steps) methods such as Ampliseq and SeqSharp have been developed that allows for rapid sequencing of target genes without cloning or prior amplification.

However, covering all potentially clinically relevant genes in a routine diagnostic setting by these methods has become virtually impossible. Reliable high-throughput methods allowing for parallel analysis of multiple targets emerged as an attractive alternative for comprehensive diagnostic neuropathology. NGS provides opportunities to evaluate many genomic targets with high accuracy and sensitivity due to high sequencing coverage. However, the Sanger method is widely used for small-scale projects, and validation of NGS results, especially long serial DNA sequence reads that are greater than 500 nucleotides.

Pyrosequencing

Pyrosequencing is a method of DNA sequencing based on the “sequencing by synthesis” principle.110 It differs from Sanger sequencing in that it relies on the detection of pyrophosphates that are released upon nucleotide incorporation rather than chain termination with dideoxynucleotides. Various gene alterations can be detected by pyrosequencing, including IDH1/IDH2 mutations, TERTp mutation and MGMT methylation.92,111-113

NGS

More recently, high volume Sanger sequencing has been sup-
FISH studies can be easily used to identify chromosomal aberrations, such as a 1p/19q codeletion, EGFR amplification or high polysomy, PTEN and CDKN2A homozygous or hemizygous deletions, C-MYC and N-MYC amplifications, BRAF fusions or copy gains, C11orf95–RELA fusions, C11orf95–YAP1 fusions, YAP1–MAML1 fusions, and MYB–QKI fusions. The probes and reading criteria of currently used FISH for the diagnosis and prognosis of brain tumors are summarized in Table 6.

The presence or absence of the 1p/19q codeletion can be determined by FISH, comparative genomic hybridization (CGH), or microsatellite analyses for a loss of heterozygosity (LOH) on chromosomes 1p and 19q.119,120 When the amount of DNA is insufficient to carry out the single nucleotide polymorphism or CGH array, microsatellite analysis is performed to evaluate via PCR to determine whether there is a LOH of chromosome 1p and 19q.121 In cases of 1p/19q codeletion, the evaluation and interpretation of FISH results are based on International Society of Pediatric Oncology

FISH reading criteria of the deletion:
1p36/1q25 ratio: < 0.8
19q13/19q13 ratio: < 0.8
% of the deleted: > 50%
If imbalance (i.e., 2/3, 3/4, 5/6, etc.):
should be confirmed by other methods, such as LOH, CGH, or WES

1p36.1–36.3
1q25.1–25.3
19p13.2
19p13.2
19q13.3
19q13.3

Fig. 3. Schematic view, photographs, and reading criteria of the FISH probes for detecting 1p and 19q deletion. The FISH probes are long enough to find out the whole arm deletion. 1p/19q deleted cases show one orange signal and two green signals. The diagnostic cut-off of 1p and 10q deletion is written in the box. FISH, fluorescent in situ hybridization; LOH, loss of heterozygosity; CGH, comparative genomic hybridization; WES, whole exome sequencing.
(SIOP) guidelines for neuroblastoma study. For each hybridization, the number of green and orange signals is assessed for a minimum of 100 nonoverlapping nuclei. An interpretation of a deletion was made when > 50% of nuclei harbored less than a single orange signal (0/2, 1/2, 0/3, 1/3, etc.). Such deletions most likely correspond to a LOH (Fig. 3). However, with increasing grades of malignancy, genomic polyploidies may be encountered. These chromosomal polysomies may be balanced (e.g., 3/3, 4/4, 5/5, etc.) or imbalanced (e.g., 3/2, 4/2, 3/5, 4/5, etc.), indicating relative gains or losses. Whether an imbalance situation with relative loss of the target 1p or 19q corresponds to a hemizygous deletion in the presence of reduplication cannot be solved by FISH. In such cases, secondary assays such as PCR-based LOH or CGH studies should be used for better specificity.

Methylation specific PCR (O6 methyl guanine methyl transferase)

Methylation can be detected by methylation specific PCR (MSP), pyrosequencing, multiplex ligation-dependent probe assay, or BeadChip microarray. In the Seoul National University Hospital, MSP is conducted using an EZ DNA methylation Kit (catalog No. D5005, Zymo Research, Irvine, CA, USA) to determine the methylation status of the MGMT promoter. The primer set is described in Table 5. The primer sequences for MGMT were as follows: methylated forward, 5′-TTT CGA CGT TCG TAG GTT TTC GC-3′; methylated reverse, 5′-GCA CTC TTC CGA AAA CGA AACG 3′; unmethylated forward, 5′-TTT GTG TTT TGA TGT TTG TAG GTT TTT GT-3′; and unmethylated reverse, 5′-AAC TCC ACA CTC TTC CAA AAA CAA AAC A-3′.

DISCUSSION

Among primary adult and pediatric CNS tumors, diffuse gliomas are the largest and most diverse group. They usually arise in the cerebral hemispheres and are defined by their widely infiltrative properties and tendency for biological progression. According to the 2016 WHO criteria, gliomas can be classified using combined histological and molecular markers as diffuse astrocytic and oligodendrogial tumors, other astrocytic tumors, ependymal tumors, or other gliomas. The most aggressive astrocytic tumors with a dismal prognosis are the GBMs with wild type IDH and DMG, histone-mutant (H3 K27, G34, and K36). Less infiltrative gliomas in children and young adults include WHO grade I pilocytic astrocytomas, WHO grade II/III pleomorphic xanthoastrocytomas, and WHO grade I subependymal giant cell astrocytomas. Other major classes of CNS tumors include neuronal and mixed glioneuronal tumors as well as embryonal tumors such as cerebellar medulloblastomas, and AT/RT, and extra-axial meningiomas.

The diagnosis of CNS tumors is historically primarily based on histopathological features. However, studies have shown that patients with morphologically identical tumors have different clinical outcomes and treatment responses due to the different molecular genetic characteristics of the tumor. Therefore, many molecular markers became deeply integrated into the diagnosis of CNS tumors and are now used to guide prognosis and treatment of patients. If molecular genetic testing is not possible, a diagnosis is made with the nonspecific term “glioma, not otherwise specified (NOS).” In this case, because the grade and the exact diagnosis of the tumor as well as the biological markers are covered, the precision diagnosis and the appropriate treatments are no longer possible. These “NOS diagnostics” must be reclassified using molecular genetic diagnostic tools.

Diffuse astrocytic and oligodendrogial tumors

Molecular genetic testing can classify diffuse astrocytic and oligodendrogial tumors (WHO grades II–III) and differentiate IDH-mutant GBMs from IDH-wildtype GBMs based on molecular signature of astrocytic and oligodendrogial tumors. Diffuse astrocytic tumors and IDH-mutant GBMs are characterized by mutations in IDH1/2, TP53, and ATRX, whereas oligodendrogliomas are characterized by mutations in IDH1/2, CIC, FUBP1, and TERTp, and a codeletion in 1p/19q (whole chromosomal arm deletion) (Fig. 1). IDH-wildtype GBMs can be identified by demonstrating a dysregulation of several critical signaling pathways and a lack of the above-mentioned genetic alterations except TERTp mutations, which are common in IDH-wildtype GBM. The main signaling pathways involved in IDH-wildtype GBMs are RTK/RAS/PI3K pathways (via amplification and mutations in EGFR [EGFRvIII], PIK3CA, RAS, NF1, and MET) and TP53 and RB1 suppressor pathways (via mutations in or loss of TP53, CDKN2A, and RB1 genes) (Fig. 1).

Mutations in IDH1/2 should be studied in diffuse gliomas for the WHO classification of CNS tumors. They are favorable prognostic markers and are genomic abnormalities initially present in both astrocytic and oligodendroglial tumors. Therefore, from the revised version of 2016 fourth edition of the CNS Tumor Classification, these two tumor categories have been combined as diffuse astrocytic and oligodendroglial tumors. P53 and ATRX mutations are now the hallmark of WHO
grade II and grade III astrocytic tumors. TERTp mutations, such as C228T and C250T, are found in more than 90% of oligodendrogial tumors and in more than 80% of GBMs as well as about 30%—40% of lower grade gliomas. Mutations in TERTp were associated with poor survival and resistance to radiotherapy in GBMs and in lower grade gliomas (grade II and III) without IDH mutation; however, TERTp mutations were associated with a favorable prognosis in lower grade gliomas with IDH mutations.65,125

High- and low-grade pediatric gliomas

Pediatric high-grade gliomas are unique, featuring mutations in H3F3A, ATRX, and DAXX, whereas PLGGs contain mutations or rearrangements in BRAF, FGFR1, or MYB. Furthermore, mutations in IDH are rare unless the patient is an adolescent (Fig. 2).22,64,65 The circumscribed low-grade gliomas such as pilocytic astrocytoma, pilomyxoid astrocytoma, ganglioglioma, and PXA often harbor the BRAF V600E or FGFR1 mutation, or gene fusions involving BRAF with KIAA1549 or FAM131B.35,62,65 Histone H3 K27M, K36, and G34 mutations should be studied in pediatric glioma arising in the midline of CNS, i.e., the thalamus, pons, and spinal cord.125 However, the histone G34 mutation can be present in cerebral high-grade diffuse gliomas of the adult (about 5%) and the histone K36 mutation is rarely found in pediatric midline gliomas.84

Finally, the BRAF V600E mutation can be studied in low-grade glioneuronal tumors, such as PXA (about 60%), ganglioglioma (about 25%), pilocytic astrocytoma (about 15%), epithelioid GBM (about 50%), and papillary type of craniopharingioma (about 100%).35,66

Medulloblastomas and other embryonic tumors

Medulloblastomas have been recently divided into several subtypes based on specific driver mutations including WNT, SHH, group 3, and group 4.125-127 Mutations in CTNNB1, DDX3X or monosomy 6 in the Wnt pathway of medulloblastomas tend to lead to a much better prognosis. In contrast, MYC or MYCN/CDK6 amplification is characteristic of group 3 and 4 medulloblastomas, which are far more likely to metastasize and have a poor prognosis even with intensive therapy. Tumors with PTCH and SM0 belong to the SHH class, and have a relatively intermediate prognosis between Wnt and group 3/4 tumors. CTNNB1 mutations can be present in classical-type medulloblastomas and adamantinomatous-type craniopharyngiomas.61,125,128

SMARCB1 (INI1) or SMARCA4 (BRG1) gene mutations or deletions are essential for the diagnosis of AT/RT, which show dismal prognosis.44-46 The molecular genetic hallmark of ETMR is chromosome 19 miRNA cluster (C19MC) amplification.129 If certain tumors are morphologically similar to these tumors, i.e., rhabdoid feature, but molecular studies do not reveal these genetic abnormalities or molecular studies cannot be done, CNS embryonal tumor with rhabdoid feature or ETMR, NOS can be made as a pathological diagnosis.7,129 Therefore, the molecular characterization of medulloblastomas and embryonal tumors have lasting clinical value.

Meningioma and meningeal solitary fibrous tumor/hemangiopericytoma

Meningiomas often have mutations in the NF2, AKT1, SM0, and KLF4 genes. Furthermore, meningiomas with mutant NF2 are far more likely to exhibit atypical grade II features than the other subtypes.50-52 Recurrent mutations in KLF4, AKT1, and SM0 genes are often present in NF2-negative sporadic meningiomas.50 Clinical trials involving SM0/AKT/NF2 inhibitors are open for patients with progressive meningiomas with SM0/AKT/NF2 mutations.50,84

Meningeal hemangiopericytomas and solitary fibrous tumors have the same genetic modification as NAB2-STAT6 gene fusion and are considered as the same tumor.48 This gene fusion study is essential for the differential diagnosis of histologically similar tumors.

Genetic alterations as prognostic and predictive markers and therapeutic targets

Overall, the analysis of multiple molecular markers not only aids in establishing a correct morphological diagnosis, but also highlights the biological differences between morphologically similar tumors. It can also help with the clinical management of patients. For example, patients with IDH1/TERTP/CIC/FUBP1 positive lower grade gliomas (WHO grades II–III) have a significantly longer median overall survival than those with IDH1/TP53/ATRX mutations.86,130

In addition, several molecular biomarkers showed promise in predicting responses to targeted therapies.94,131 For example, clinical trials are now open for GBMs with EGFRvIII mutations, vemurafenib is being evaluated in BRAF V600E mutant gliomas, and clinical response has already been observed in FGFR3-TACC3–positive patients treated with an FGFR inhibitor.78 NGS-based high-throughput molecular testing may provide potential new targets for precision medicine.
CONCLUSION

We are now in the era of precision medicine, and have slowly caught up with the rapid development of precision medicine. High-throughput assays that can test multiple genes at once are essential for pathological diagnosis in daily practice, and NGS technology has made this possible. Current practices and guidelines for the clinical use of NGS-based oncology tests are well documented in Strom’s paper. However, the medical insurance system has not kept up with the speed of technical development, the advances in diagnostic modalities, and newly developed treatment options. These are obstacles that prevents the doctors from implementing the precision medicine. In order to introduce the advanced knowledge and technologies into the daily practice of pathological diagnosis and clinical fields and reduce the costs, the medical insurance system should be formulated accordingly.

Conflicts of Interest

No potential conflict of interest relevant to this article was reported.

Acknowledgments

This work was supported by Grant from Korean Society of Pathologist (2016).

REFERENCES


Molecular Testing of Brain Tumors

https://doi.org/10.4132/jptm.2017.03.08
http://jpatholtm.org/
94. Venkatesan S, Lamfers ML, Dirven CM, Leenstra S. Genetic bio-
markers of drug response for small-molecule therapeutics targeting the RTK/Ras/PI3K, p53 or Rb pathway in glioblastoma. CNS Oncol 2016; 5: 77-90.
108. Gajjar A, Pfister SM, Taylor MD, Gilbertson RJ. Molecular insights
into pediatric brain tumors have the potential to transform therapy. Clin Cancer Res 2014; 20: 5630-40.
Molecular Testing of Lymphoproliferative Disorders: Current Status and Perspectives

Yoon Kyung Jeon · Sun Och Yoon1
Jin Ho Paik2 · Young A Kim3
Bong Kyung Shin4 · Hyun-Jung Kim5
Hee Jeong Cha6 · Ji Eun Kim3
Jooryung Huh7 · Young-Hyeh Ko8
The Hematopathology Study Group of the Korean Society of Pathologists · The Molecular Pathology Study Group of Korean Society of Pathologists

Department of Pathology, Seoul National University Hospital, Seoul National University College of Medicine, Seoul; 1Department of Pathology, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Seoul; 2Department of Pathology, Seoul National University Bundang Hospital, Seoul National University College of Medicine, Seongnam; 3Department of Pathology, SMG-SNU Boramae Medical Center, Seoul National University College of Medicine, Seoul; 4Department of Pathology, Korea University Guro Hospital, Korea University School of Medicine, Seoul; 5Department of Pathology, Inje University Sanggye Paik Hospital, Seoul; 6Department of Pathology, Ulsan University Hospital, University of Ulsan College of Medicine, Ulsan; 7Department of Pathology, Asan Medical Center, University of Ulsan College of Medicine, Seoul; 8Department of Pathology, Samsung Medical Center, Sungkyunkwan University School of Medicine, Seoul, Korea

Received: March 17, 2017
Accepted: April 9, 2017

Corresponding Author
Yoon Kyung Jeon, MD, PhD
Department of Pathology, Seoul National University Hospital, Seoul National University College of Medicine, 101 Daehak-ro, Jongno-gu, Seoul 03080, Korea
Tel: +82-2-2072-1347
Fax: +82-2-743-5530
E-mail: ykjeon@snu.ac.kr

Young-Hyeh Ko, MD, PhD
Department of Pathology, Samsung Medical Center, Sungkyunkwan University School of Medicine, 81 Inwon-ro, Gangnam-gu, Seoul 06351, Korea
Tel: +82-2-3410-2762
Fax: +82-2-3410-0025
E-mail: yhko310@skku.edu

Key Words: Lymphoproliferative disorders; Malignant lymphoma; Pathology, molecular; Molecular diagnostics; Clonality test; Gene translocation; In situ hybridization, fluorescence; Next-generation sequencing

Molecular pathologic testing plays an important role for the diagnosis, prognostication and decision of treatment strategy in lymphoproliferative disease. Here, we briefly review the molecular tests currently used for lymphoproliferative disease and those which will be implicated in clinical practice in the near future. Specifically, this guideline addresses the clonality test for B- and T-cell proliferative lesions, molecular cytogenetic tests for malignant lymphoma, determination of cell-of-origin in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, and molecular genetic alterations incorporated in the 2016 revision of the World Health Organization classification of lymphoid neoplasms. Finally, a new perspective on the next-generation sequencing for diagnostic, prognostic, and therapeutic purpose in malignant lymphoma will be summarized.
Molecular pathologic testing plays an important role for the diagnosis, prognostication and decision of treatment in lymphoproliferative disease. Classification of malignant lymphomas has been evolved to define unique clinicopathological entities for optimizing management of patients and thereby improving the clinical outcome. Advances in radiological and diagnostic techniques in medicine have made it possible to detect diseases earlier and with smaller sized tissues. Thus, pathologists are facing challenges in the diagnosis of lymphoproliferative disease. In addition, gene expression profile has clinical implication for the prognosis and patient management as examples by diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL). Moreover, various molecular genetic alterations have been reported in lymphoma, which are likely candidates for target therapy in the era of precision medicine. Therefore, pathologic diagnosis of malignant lymphoma currently demands multimodal approach including morphology, immunophenotype, viral status, and genetic alterations. In addition, introduction of next-generation sequencing (NGS) techniques to the pathologic diagnosis of lymphoma is around the corner. This review is intended to give a brief overview and guideline for molecular tests for lymphoproliferative disease with a focus on malignant lymphoma, including the B- and T-cell clonality test, molecular cytogentic test, determination of cell-of-origin (COO) in DLBCL, and molecular genetic tests incorporated in the 2016 revision of World Health Organization (WHO) classification of lymphoid neoplasm. A perspective on NGS tests in lymphoma will also be addressed.

**B- AND T-CELL CLONALITY TEST**

**Background: Ig and T-cell receptor gene rearrangements**

B and T cells are the only cells undergoing physiological gene rearrangement of their genomic DNA to produce unique Ig and T-cell receptor (TCR) molecules, respectively. The Ig and TCR genes contain many different variable (V), diversity (D), and joining (J) gene segments, which undergoes random gene rearrangement during early lymphoid development.1,2 Ig heavy chain (IGH), TCR beta (TCRB), and TCR delta (TCRD) genes have V, D, and J gene segments, and Ig kappa (IGK), Ig lambda (IGL), TCR alpha (TCRA), and TCR gamma (TCRG) genes have V and J gene segments.3 To further create diversity of Ig and TCR molecules, variable numbers of nucleotides are lost and inserted at the joining lesion (i.e., the V-D, V-J, or D-J junction) through the action of terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT).4 Consequently, these processes produce an incredibly large repertoire of Ig and TCR molecules due to both the combinatorial diversity and the junctional diversity.5 The normal blood B-cell receptor (BCR) and TCR repertoire is estimated to comprise more than $10^{12}$ distinct sequences, and many of these are present at low frequency under physiologic condition.6 Thus, the detection of a single predominant BCR or TCR population indicates the presence of a clonally expanded B- or T-cell population, respectively.

Ig and TCR gene rearrangements occur in a hierarchical order. During B-cell development, the IGH genes are first rearranged, followed by rearrangement of IGK genes potentially resulting in IgH/k expression. Alternatively, IGH gene rearrangement is followed by IGK deletion and IGL rearrangement, potentially resulting in IgH/k expression.7 Thus, IGH gene is most widely utilized in the clonality test for B-cell proliferative disease, followed by IGK and IGL.5,6 During T-cell development, TCRD gene rearrangement occurs first in early thymocytes, followed by TCRG gene rearrangement, potentially resulting in TCRγδ expression in a small subset of thymocytes and differentiation to γδT cells. However, in most thymocytes, TCRG and TCRD rearrangements are followed by TCRB rearrangement and subsequent TCRA rearrangement (this rearrangement leads to the deletion of the TCRD locus because TCRD gene is located within the TCRA gene), potentially followed by TCRαβ expression and further differentiation into αβT cells. Consistent with this hierarchical gene rearrangement, virtually all αβT cells have rearranged TCRG as well as TCRB and TCRA genes; however, the γδT cells harbor rearranged TCRG and only rarely contain rearranged TCRB genes.5,8 This has important implications for T-cell clonality testing, because virtually all the αβTCR expressing T-cell lymphomas as well as the γδT cell neoplasms will have a rearranged TCRG gene. Thus, TCRG gene is most widely utilized, followed by TCRB and then TCRA, for T-cell clonality test.5,8

**Indication**

Molecular clonality test is required for making a final diagnosis of lymphoproliferative disorder when the diagnosis is inconclusive despite of extensive morphologic and immunophenotypic analysis. Common indications are as follows: (1) all suspected T-cell proliferations, (2) any suspected B-cell proliferation when morphology and immunophenotyping are not conclusive, (3) when limited tissues are available (such as skin biopsy and needle biopsy), (4) to determine involvement of lymphoma in cytology material, especially in limited specimen such as cerebrospinal fluid and vitreous fluid, (5) to detect minimal residual disease, (6) when lymphoproliferations are noted in immunodeficient patients, including post-transplant patients, (7) to evalu-
ate the clonal relationship between two lymphoid malignancies in one patient or to differentiate a relapse from a second malignancy, (8) to further classify malignancy via Ig/TCR gene rearrangement patterns or particular chromosome aberrations, and (9) to stage lymphomas, occasionally.

**Methodology**

B- and T-cell clonality can be either indirectly determined by detection of monotypic Ig and TCR molecules or directly by genetic tests. Because reactive polyclonal B cells have Igκ/Igλ ratio ranging from 0.7 to 2.8, Ig light chain expression with Igκ/Igλ ratios of >4.0 or <0.5 has been considered as an evidence suggestive of clonal B-cell proliferation. Ig light chain restriction can be detected by flow cytometry, *in situ* hybridization or immunohistochemistry. The detection of monotypic TCR expression can be done using flow cytometry for TCR molecules. However, these indirect methods have limitations because flow cytometry is difficult to perform using tissue samples, antibodies against specific TCR molecules are limited and usage of TCR repertoire is often restricted even under non-neoplastic condition. In contrast, molecular techniques, including southern blot and polymerase chain reaction (PCR) analyses, are broadly applicable to the detection of clonally rearranged Ig and TCR genes.

Southern blot analysis has long been considered as a gold standard for molecular clonality studies. It detects rearranged DNA fragments after digestion with restriction enzymes. Large amount (10–20 mg) of high quality DNA from fresh tissue, well-chosen restriction enzymes, well-designed DNA probes and technical excellence are required for Southern blot analysis. In addition, because Southern blot analysis basically focuses on the combinational diversity of Ig and TCR gene segments, it is useful for the assessment of *IGH*, *IGK*, and *TCRB* genes, but is of limited value for highly complex *IGL* and *TCRA* genes or relatively simple *TCRG* and *TCRD* genes. Thus, despite the high reliability of Southern blot, it has been replaced by PCR techniques in clinical laboratories.

PCR techniques to detect rearranged Ig and TCR genes have considerable merits; it can be performed using a small amount of DNA and a variety of clinical samples including formalin fixed paraffin-embedded (FFPE) tissue, fresh tissue, and cytology samples, the turnaround time is short, and the PCR-based assay is relatively easy to perform and standardize. In PCR-based clonality test, as mentioned above, *IGH* genes are most widely used for B-cell clonality test followed by *IGK*, and *TCRG* genes are most widely utilized for T-cell clonality test followed by *TCRB*. PCR-based clonality test basically adopts multiplex-
PCR techniques using multiple primers complementary to consensus or framework sequence of Ig and TCR gene families/segments. Due to the junctional diversity during gene rearrangement, polyclonal B and T cells produce PCR products having variable size and nucleotide composition. However, monoclonal B and T cells produce PCR products having identical size and nucleotide composition, which can be detected as an evidence of monoclonality.\(^3,8\) Conventionally, a variety of primer sets have been developed and used among laboratories for PCR analysis of Ig and TCR gene rearrangement.\(^10-13\) In recent years, laboratory-developed PCR tests to detect Ig and TCR gene rearrangement are being gradually replaced by BIOMED-2 (or EuroClonality) assay, which is now commercially available as IdentiClone clonality assay (Invivoscribe Technologies Inc., San Diego, CA, USA).\(^3,6,14-17\) In brief, BIOMED-2 assays utilize 14 multiplex PCR tubes altogether, including three VH-JH, two DH-JH, two IGK, one IGL, three TCRB, two TCRG, and one TCRD, to detect B- and T-cell clonality (Figs. 1, 2). The primer sets and design of multiplex PCR for each Ig and TCR gene rearrangement were previously described in detail.\(^3\) A set of BIOMED-2 assays can be selected and implemented in individual laboratory for clinical practice.\(^6\)

Interpretation and reporting: PCR-based clonality assay

Evaluation of PCR product for clonality test can be performed using gel-based assay or capillary electrophoresis (CE) by gene scanner (Fig. 3). Gel-based assays are represented by denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis (EP) and heteroduplex analysis followed by non-denaturing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (PAGE). While denaturing gel EP and CE analysis can discriminate PCR products based on the size difference, heteroduplex analysis with non-denaturing PAGE has a merit to discriminate PCR products on the basis of sequence differences as well as size differences.\(^3\) Thus, heteroduplex analysis can be considered to prevent false positive results.

In principal, monoclonal B- or T-cell population exhibits prominent unequivocal one or two clonal peak(s) and band(s) when analyzed by CE and gel-EP, respectively.\(^3,6,17-17\) A common definition of a prominent peak in CE is one that is greater than twice the size of the background polyclonal population.\(^8\) Meanwhile, commercial kits for BIOMED-2 assay defines a positive peak as one that is at least three times the amplitude of the third largest peak in the same polyclonal background distribution or the closest polyclonal background distribution to the product. Otherwise, commercial kit for BIOMED-2 assay of TCRG provides automated interpretation for the significance of a peak.

**Fig. 2.** Structure of TCRG genes and the BIOMED-2 multiplex TCRG gene polymerase chain reaction assay.
analyzed by CE through a mathematical algorithm. The presence of two predominant peaks rarely occurs, indicating biallelic rearrangements, usually at both TCR loci. Polyclonal B- or T-cell populations typically exhibit a Gaussian distribution when analyzed by CE and a smear when analyzed by gel-EP. However, in many clinical samples, a polyclonal background may not exhibit an expected distribution due to fewer number of reactive B or T cells, PCR efficiencies, and other factors.

Fig. 3. Representative results and interpretation of BIOMED-2 multiplex IGH PCR analyzed by gene scanning. Clonal IGH gene rearrangement was detected in case (A), but not in case (B).
Moreover, it would be difficult to determine the presence of unequivocal clonality when weak peaks or bands are observed. Thus, interpretation of PCR-based clonality assay could be challenging.

Clonal peaks/bands observed in multiple multiplex-PCR reactions (i.e., tubes) and, moreover, reproducible in duplicate are highly convincing for the presence of monoclonal population. However, clear clonality would be detected in a single multiplex Ig/TCR PCR reaction (tube). The presence of an equivocal weak Ig/TCR band/peak within a polyclonal background can be regarded as low-level of clonality. Such equivocal products are often detected with either heteroduplex or Gene Scan. To avoid false-positivity of the clonality assay, duplicate test might be considered (see below), although not mandatory for the clonality test, particularly when using validated approved test. General guidelines for interpretation and reporting of Ig/TCR clonality test are summarized in Table 1, on the condition that the test is appropriately validated.

Validation of test, quality assurance, and limitations and pitfalls

Utility and accuracy of molecular clonality test are affected by both biological and technical factors. For appropriate interpretation of results and quality assurance of clonality test, pathologists must be well-acquainted with the limitations and pitfalls. Most importantly, pathologists and clinicians must understand that the results of clonality test should always be interpreted in the context of morphological, immunophenotypical, and clinical features of patients.

Validation of test and quality assurance

Each assay should be performed along with positive, negative, and no template controls. If the controls do not yield the expected results, the assay is not valid and the samples should not be interpreted. To ensure the quality and quantity of DNA and the absence of inhibitors of PCR reactions, specimen control size ladder, which amplifies multiple genes ranging the size of PCR product for Ig and TCR genes, is essential. If no bands are seen or smaller sized products are amplified only, the assay or sample should be re-evaluated unless the test result of specimen is positive.

Limited sensitivity and false-negative results

A sensitive PCR-based clonality test has detection limits of 1%–10%, depending on the applied techniques and the background of non-neoplastic B and T cells. In addition, false-negative results of PCR-based clonality test can be caused by improper primer annealing or difficulties in discrimination between monoclonal and polyclonal Ig/TCR gene rearrangements. Interpretation guideline of monoclonality and polyclonality is described above and in Table 1 and is also provided by manufacturer with commercial kit. However, this discrimination is occasionally not straightforward. In this case, analysis of multiple Ig and TCR genes and repeated examination might be helpful. Improper annealing of the PCR primers to the Ig and TCR genes can be mainly caused by two factors. First, family or consensus primers cannot precisely cover all different V, D, and J gene segments, particularly in Ig and TCR genes having many different gene segments. Second, mature B cells undergo somatic hypermutation in rearranged Ig genes and isotype class switching in germinal

Table 1. EuroClonality/BIOMED-2 guidelines for interpretation and reporting of Ig/TCR clonality testing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of profile per tube (in duplicate)</th>
<th>Technical description</th>
<th>Molecular interpretation/conclusion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No peaks/bands (but: poor DNA quality)</td>
<td>No (specific) product, poor DNA quality</td>
<td>Not evaluable, due to poor DNA quality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No peaks/bands (without background)</td>
<td>No (specific) product</td>
<td>No rearrangement in Ig/TCR targets detected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One or two reproducible clonal peaks/bandsa</td>
<td>Clonalb</td>
<td>Clonality detected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One or two non-reproducible (clear) peaks/bandsa</td>
<td>Pseudoclonal</td>
<td>No clonality detected, suggestive of low template amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple (n ≥ 3) non-reproducible peaks/bandsa</td>
<td>Pseudoclonal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaussian curve/smeared (with or without minor reproducible peaks/bandsa)</td>
<td>Polyclonal (not clonalb)</td>
<td>Polyclonality detected (no clonality detected)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pattern that cannot be categorized as one of the above</td>
<td>Not evaluable/</td>
<td>Not evaluable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


TCR, T-cell receptor.
aIn heteroduplex analysis the number of bands does not necessarily reflect the number of different polymerase chain reaction products, as additional heteroduplexes can be formed between products; bClonal peaks/bands are not necessarily seen for every Ig/TCR target analyzed to reach the molecular conclusion “clonality detected”; cFor IGK and TCRB loci up to four clonal products may be compatible with one clone; dIn heteroduplex analysis a polyclonal smear may not always be smooth or clear, despite specific product in gel; hence this is scored as “not clonal”; eFor those cases in which minor reproducible peaks/bands are detected in the polyclonal background; fIn < 5% of polymerase chain reaction results the description per tube cannot be made.
centers for affinity maturation of the Ig molecules. This physiologic phenomenon can hamper the proper annealing of PCR primers. Thus, mature B-cell lymphomas of germinatal center or post-germinatal center origin with somatically mutated Ig genes are more likely to show false-negative results.\textsuperscript{15,16}

**Pseudoclonality and false-positive results**

Pseudoclonality of a sensitive PCR assay refers to selective amplification of the Ig or TCR gene rearrangements from a few reactive B or T cells in the tissue samples, particularly in a small biopsy. Evaluating the reproducibility of clonal band/peak by performing duplicate or repeated PCR analyses will help to clarify whether the seemingly clonal PCR products are derived from different lymphocytes or not.\textsuperscript{6} On the other hand, PCR analyses can produce false-positive results, especially when discriminating the monoclonal, oligoclonal, or polyclonal populations solely based on the size of PCR products using techniques with low resolution. To avoid serious false-positive PCR results, discrimination of PCR products can be achieved via Gene Scanning, which has higher resolution than gel-based assay or via single-strand conformation polymorphism analysis, denaturing gradient gel EP and heteroduplex analysis.\textsuperscript{19,20} These latter techniques discriminate PCR products in terms of composition of nucleotides, in addition to the length of nucleotides, derived from junctional diversity during Ig/TCR gene rearrangements.

**Clonality is not equivalent to malignancy or lymphoma**

Some clinically benign lymphoproliferative diseases (i.e., monoclonal gammopathy of unknown significance, lymphomatoïd papulosis) can exhibit clonality. In addition, non-neoplastic lymphoproliferations including viral infection (i.e., Epstein-Barr virus, cytomegalovirus), bacterial infection (i.e., *Helicobacter pylori gastritis*), autoimmune diseases, and immunodeficiency status can harbor predominance of several antigen-specific subclones or reduced diversity of B- or T-cell repertoire, thus displaying oligoclonality or even monoclonality.

**Ig and TCR gene rearrangements are not markers for lineage**

Crosslineage Ig/TCR gene rearrangements occur relatively frequently in immature T- or B-cell malignancies (i.e., acute lymphoblastic lymphomas), and even in acute myeloid leukemias.\textsuperscript{21-24} Virtually all αβ T-cell lymphomas, including those with rare post-germinatal center origin with somatically mutated Ig genes, implying that the detection of TCRB or TCRG rearrangements is not indicative of T cells of the αβ or γδβ T-cell lineage, respectively.\textsuperscript{7-9,21,25,26} Mature B- and T-cell lymphomas might rarely contain TCR and Ig gene rearrangements, respectively.\textsuperscript{21,24} Particularly, angioimmunoblastic T-cell lymphomas (AITL) frequently exhibit Ig gene rearrangements up to 20%–30% of cases.\textsuperscript{17}

**CHROMOSOME AND GENE TRANSLOCATIONS**

**Background and indications including changes in the 2016 revision of WHO classification**

Structural alterations of chromosome and/or genes important for the diagnosis, prognostication and therapeutics in tumor include amplification, deletion and translocation (or rearrangement). B- and T-cell malignancies frequently undergo pathologic chromosome/gene rearrangement in addition to the physiologic rearrangement of Ig and TCR genes. Gene translocations in hematolymphoid malignancies result in the overexpression of oncogenes involving cell proliferation and apoptosis under the influence of Ig promoter or the production of fusion proteins having dysregulated expression or kinase activity. Gene translocations can be analyzed by multiple methods including conventional karyotyping, fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH), Southern blotting, and reverse-transcription PCR. Otherwise, aberrant expression of proteins derived from gene translocation can be detected by immunohistochemistry.\textsuperscript{27} Common chromosome/gene translocations with diagnostic and clinical implications in mature B and T-cell lymphomas and the detection method commonly used for clinical practice are summarized in Table 2.

Patients with DLBCL harboring MYC translocation (approximately in 5%–15% of DLBCL) or concurrent MYC and BCL2 translocations (approximately in 5%–6% of DLBCL) had very poor prognosis.\textsuperscript{28-31} Of note, the 2016 revision of WHO classification has newly introduced high-grade B-cell lymphomas with MYC and BCL2 and/or BCL6 translocations (other than follicular lymphoma and lymphoblastic lymphoma) as a category of “double-/triple-hit” lymphomas.\textsuperscript{32} These lymphomas morphologically resemble DLBCL or B-cell lymphoma, unclassifiable, with features intermediate between DLBCL and Burkitt lymphoma which had been recognized in 2008 WHO classification.\textsuperscript{33} The patients with “double-/triple-hit” lymphomas show a very aggressive clinical course and poor prognosis despite high-intensity chemotherapy. However, a consensus has not yet been reached for the guidelines to test FISH for MYC, BCL2, and BCL6 rearrangements in high-grade B-cell lymphoma. In contrast, MYC protein expression is observed in 30%–50% of DLBCLs and concomitant expression of MYC and BCL2 in
Table 2. Common chromosome/gene translocations having diagnostic and clinical implications in mature B- and T-cell lymphoma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity</th>
<th>Chromosome/Gene translocation</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Detection method</th>
<th>Implication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mantle cell lymphoma</td>
<td>t(11;14)(q13;q32), CCND1 and IGH</td>
<td>&gt;90%</td>
<td>IHC, FISH</td>
<td>Diagnostic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Follicular lymphoma</td>
<td>t(14;18)(q32;q21), BCL2 and IGH</td>
<td>Grade 1, 2: 90% Grade 3a, 3b: &lt;30%</td>
<td>IHC, FISH</td>
<td>Diagnostic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burkitt lymphoma</td>
<td>t(8;14)(q24;q32), MYC and IGH</td>
<td>&gt;95%</td>
<td>FISH</td>
<td>Diagnostic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma</td>
<td>t(2;8)(p12;q24), MYC and IGH</td>
<td>&gt;10%</td>
<td>FISH</td>
<td>Prognostic (poor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-grade B-cell lymphoma with MYC and BCL2 and/or BCL6 rearrangements (double-/triple-hit lymphoma) a</td>
<td>t(8)(q24), MYC</td>
<td></td>
<td>FISH</td>
<td>Diagnostic (poor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MALT lymphoma</td>
<td>t(11;19)(q21;q21), API2 and MALT1</td>
<td>5%–20% (stomach) 30%–50% (lung)</td>
<td>FISH, RT-PCR</td>
<td>Therapeutic (resistance to Helicobacter pylori eradication)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anaplastic large cell lymphoma, ALK-positive</td>
<td>t(2;5)(p23;q35), NPM and ALK Variants involving 2p23, ALK Variants 15%</td>
<td>&gt;95%</td>
<td>IHC, FISH</td>
<td>Diagnostic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IHC, immunohistochemistry; FISH, fluorescence in situ hybridization; MALT, mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue; RT-PCR, reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction; ALK, anaplastic lymphoma kinase.

*Included in the 2016 Revision of World Health Organization classification.

20%–35% of the cases; these “double-expressor lymphoma” cases are four to five times higher in incidence than those with MYC and BCL2 double-hit (i.e., translocation).29-31,34 Although a cutoff for MYC and BCL2 expression for double-expressor has varied among studies, a cutoff of 30% or 40% for MYC and a cutoff of 50% or 70% for BCL2 are usually used to define these cases.34 Several studies demonstrated that the double-expressor lymphomas have a worse outcome than other DLBCL, even irrespective of COO.31 Thus, the 2016 revision of WHO classification suggests that coexpression of MYC and BCL2 should be considered new prognostic indicator in DLBCL, not otherwise specified (NOS).32

Method: FISH—procedures and probes

Interphase FISH is now widely used to detect chromosome/gene translocations using FFPE tissue, fresh tissue, and cytologic samples. FISH is a process by which fluorochrome-labeled specific DNA probe hybridizes to a complementary location on a chromosome. FISH test includes selection of appropriate probe, pretreatment, hybridization and interpretation.35,36 When using validated probe, optimal pretreatment of tissue sections most affect the FISH test on FFPE tissue. Pretreatment refers to permeabilization of the cells to enable the probe to access the target DNA in the nucleus to hybridize. This procedure follows multiple steps including antigen retrieval procedure (i.e., citrate, EDTA), incubation with acid, detergent, and chaotropic agents (i.e., sodium thiocyanate [NaSCN]), and protease digestion, depending on the tissue condition. Hybridization procedures consist of co-denaturing target DNA and probe DNA at high temperature in the presence of formamide into single strands and incubating the slide to allow the probe DNA to attach to the target DNA.35 For detection of the common gene translocations in lymphoma, various probe sets and protocols for hybridization are now commercially available. FISH test for gene translocations are usually performed by two types of FISH probe.35,36 One is the dual-color “dual-fusion” probe (or two break points spanning probe), in which each translocation partner is identified by a probe of different color, usually red and green. The normal configuration is therefore two red signals and two green signals in each nucleus. When a translocation occurs between two genes, one of each signal is split and the different halves join together; these result in signal pattern of one red, one green, and two fused signals (Fig. 4A). This probe has a merit to assure the fusion partners exactly and is useful for the diagnosis of gene translocations involving specific genes as in follicular lymphoma, which mostly harbors BCL2/IGH fusion. However, it has limitations in applying to the gene translocations having multiple fusion partners and can show false positive signals due to nuclear or chromosome overlapping in tissue FISH. To detect a gene translocation that can involve multiple partners, a dual-color “break-apart” probe (or breakpoint flanking probe) can be more useful. With this type of probe, the normal configuration is two paired signals. If there is any translocation present involving this gene, the two colors will be split apart, resulting in one paired (normal) signal, one red, and one green (Fig. 4B). There could be a small gap or space between the two colors in some probe when the DNA is unwound. However, when the translocation occurs inter-chro-
mosomally, the signals are usually separated with ample space and the rate of false-positivity is very low. Thus, this type of probe is useful for detecting gene translocation to make a diagnosis by integrating other pathological features. Selection of FISH probe depends on the disease entity and the purpose of the test.

**Reporting**

In principle, FISH reporting follows a system for FISH nomenclature, the International System for Human Cytogenetic Nomenclature (ISCN) in both metaphase and interphase assay. If a 14;18 translocation resulting in fusion of the IGH and BCL2 genes studied in interphase FISH using a dual-color, dual-fusion probe set, the ISCN nomenclature would be written as follows: nuc ish (IGH × 3), (BCL2 × 3), (IGH con BCL2 × 2), indicating that each of the probes has been split apart and juxtaposed by the translocation. However, the system may seem confusing to pathologists not familiar with conventional cytogenetics, particularly those who are generally dealing with interphase FISH for solid tumors. FISH reporting may be modified according to the guideline provided by manufacturers of FISH probe and the purpose of the test in case of solid tumors. In principal, the report should also contain a statement as to the FISH results being normal or abnormal, and indicate the percentage of abnormal and normal cells. Specific names of the probes and the manufacturer and any specific limitations of the assay should be included in the report. Interpretation of the report on the diagnostic and prognostic significance of the FISH findings, with the clinicopathological findings incorporated, and suggestion of any further tests could be recommended.

**Validation of the test and quality assurance**

When a new FISH test is implemented in the laboratory, extensive validation is required, including validation of the probe itself (probe validation) and validation of the procedures using the probe (analytical validation) (American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics, Standards and Guidelines for Clinical Genetic Laboratories, Section E: Clinical Cytogenetics, http://www.acmg.net). Commercial probes, which are supplied by various manufacturers including Abbott (Vysis), Cambio,
Cytocell, Dako, Kreatech, and Poseidon (Stretton), are generally easy to use and validated. However, because they can vary in terms of application, size (50 kb–1 Mb) and covered chromosome loci, users must read the datasheet and probe map very carefully and become familiar with the FISH pattern using the probe. Regarding the analytical validation in interphase FISH using FFPE tissue, normal reference ranges can be calculated by evaluating available tissues without the rearrangement being validated. To validate a FISH test, known normal and abnormal cases should be assessed to establish clearly defined scoring criteria for determining whether the assay is acceptable or not. For this, inter-laboratory cross-validation and participation in a proficiency testing program are recommended.36

**CELL-OF-ORIGIN OF DIFFUSE LARGE B-CELL LYMPHOMA**

**Background and indications including changes in the 2016 revision of WHO classification**

Gene expression profiling (GEP) studies classified DLBCL into clinically and biologically distinct subsets reflecting COO as follows: germinal center B-cell (GCB)-like DLBCL expresses genes related to normal GCBs, and activated B-cell (ABC)-like DLBCL lacks genes expressed in GCBs but expresses genes related to BCR activated B cells arrested during plasmacytic differentiation. Unclassifiable cases cannot be put into either category. Patients with ABC DLBCL have a worse clinical outcome than do patients with GCB DLBCL when treated with R-CHOP regimen.38-41 Because GEP is hard to implement in a routine clinical test, many efforts have been made to classify COO of DLBCL using immunohistochemistry (IHC) for several markers, despite issues on reproducibility and reliability of IHC algorithms.42-45 The 2008 classification recognized GCB and ABC/non-GCB “molecular or immunohistochemical subgroups” of DLBCL based on GEP or IHC but considered these subclassification of DLBCL as optional.33 Subsequent studies have demonstrated that the differences in genetic alterations and activation of signaling pathways as well as prognosis between GCB and ABC/non-GCB DLBCLs may affect the potential therapeutic targets and personalized therapy of patients with DLBCL as described previously.46 Thus, the 2016 revision of WHO classification requires the identification of GCB versus ABC/non-GCB DLBCL using either GEP or IHC.32

**Methodology**

GEP using microarray, including Lymphochip microarray and Affymetrix microarray, robustly classified the GCB versus ABC DLBCL with prognostic significance.38,39 However, these assays need fresh tissue for a large amount of RNA of high-quality and have restrictions for clinical application. Thus, several immunohistochemical algorithms as surrogates have been developed, as represented by Hans and Choi algorithm (Fig. 5), which have shown reasonable correlations with GEP.42,43 However, in the following studies, the concordance rate between the immunohistochemically defined and GEP-defined subgroups has been variable and the IHC algorithm has some limitations in terms of accuracy, reproducibility and prognostic utility.44,45

Recently, a 20-gene gene expression assay using FFPE tissues and NanoString-based digital gene expression technology has been proposed for the determination of COO subgroups of

---

**Fig. 5.** Representative immunohistochemical algorithms for the subgrouping of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma.42,43 GCB, germinal center B-cell.
DLBCL. This assay (Lymph2CX) identified GCB versus ABC/non-GCB subgroups by quantifying the RNA transcripts extracted from FFPE tissue and produced reproducible accuracy and prognostic value. Although these assays using nCounter system are not yet accessible to most laboratories, it may be a promising alternative to the IHC-based algorithms.

MOLECULAR TESTING USING NEXT-GENERATION SEQUENCING: FUTURE NEXT-GENERATION SEQUENCING PANEL FOR DIAGNOSTIC, PROGNOSTIC AND PREDICTIVE PURPOSE

Background

Assays for single gene detection have been replaced by NGS which allows for the simultaneous evaluation of many genes. Targeted sequencing for gene sets is appropriate for clinical purpose and can acquire information for diagnosis, prognostication, and therapeutic targets. Currently, Korea Food and Drug Administration (KFDA) allows two levels of NGS test panel. Level 1 is composed of less than 50 genes including TP53 and MYD88. Level II is composed of less than 200 genes including NOTCH1 and NOTCH2. Although there is no general guideline for which gene sets should be included in molecular test using NGS, it is recommended that genes for pathologic diagnosis and prognostication according to the WHO classification and genes with implications for standard clinical management and current clinical trial be included in the level I gene set. Level II gene set may include potential therapeutic targets which are identified in high throughput sequencing of malignant lymphoma, but have no available drug yet. Recommended list of genes is depicted in Tables 3 and 4.

Genes incorporated in the 2016 revision of WHO classification as a diagnostic marker

Rearrangement of a specific gene is diagnostic for a certain type of malignant lymphoma. It includes BCL2 for follicular lymphoma, MYC for Burkitt lymphoma, simultaneous rearrangement of MYC with BCL2 and/or BCL6 for high grade B-cell lymphoma, and CCND1, CCND2, and CCND3 for mantle cell lymphoma (MCL).32-33 The 2016 revision of WHO classification incorporated a few additional genes in the diagnostic criteria.32 BRAF V600E mutations are found in almost all cases of hairy cell leukemia (HCL) but not in HCL-variant (HCL-v) or other small B-cell lymphoid neoplasms.30-32 Mutations in MAP2K1 which encodes MEK1 (which is downstream of BRAF)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3. Level I gene list in NGS panel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11q gain/loss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1P36 deletion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AKT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCL2 translocation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCL6 translocation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIRC3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRAF V600E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BTK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcineurin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CARD11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCND1 rearrangement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD79A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD79B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDK4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDK6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEK1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTLA4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CXCR4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDX3X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DUSP22 rearrangement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EZH2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FYN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GATA3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDH2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRAK1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRAK4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRF4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JAK1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JAK2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAP2K1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAPK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLL2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MYC rearrangement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MYD88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PI3K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PI3KCDC2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PKCbeta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHOA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBL1XR1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TP53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TP63 rearrangement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAV1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XPO1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NGS, next-generation sequencing.
have been reported in almost half of HCL-v and in the majority of HCL that useIGHV4-3-4 and which, like HCL-v, lackBRAF V600E mutations.35,36 MYD88 mutation is important in the differential diagnosis between nodal marginal zone lymphoma and lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma (LPL).35-38 Ninety percent of LPL or Waldenström macroglobulinemia have MYD88 L265P mutations. This mutation is also found in a percent of LPL or Waldenström macroglobulinemia have MYD88 L265P mutations. This mutation is also found in a

Table 4. Level II gene list in NGS panel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTB</th>
<th>ANKRD11</th>
<th>APC</th>
<th>ARID1A</th>
<th>ATM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AURKA</td>
<td>AURKB</td>
<td>B2M</td>
<td>BAP1</td>
<td>BCL10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCL11B</td>
<td>BCL2</td>
<td>BCL7A</td>
<td>BCL2L1</td>
<td>BRC1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRC2</td>
<td>BTG1</td>
<td>CCND2</td>
<td>CCND3</td>
<td>CCNE1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCOR</td>
<td>CCT6B</td>
<td>CD22</td>
<td>CD274 (PD-L1)</td>
<td>CDK12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDK8</td>
<td>CDKN1B</td>
<td>CDKN2A</td>
<td>CDKN2B</td>
<td>CDKN2C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEK2</td>
<td>CIIA</td>
<td>DNM3</td>
<td>DUSP9</td>
<td>EGF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EP300</td>
<td>EPG-1</td>
<td>ERK</td>
<td>ETS1</td>
<td>ETV1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETV5</td>
<td>ETV6</td>
<td>FAK</td>
<td>FAS</td>
<td>FGFR1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOXO1</td>
<td>FOXO3</td>
<td>FOXP1</td>
<td>GNA13</td>
<td>HDAC1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDAC4</td>
<td>HDAC7</td>
<td>HIST1H1C</td>
<td>HIST1H1D</td>
<td>HIST1H1E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIST1H2AC</td>
<td>HIST1H2AG</td>
<td>HIST1H2AL</td>
<td>HIST1H2AM</td>
<td>HIST1H2BC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIST1H2BJ</td>
<td>HIST1H2BK</td>
<td>HIST1H2BO</td>
<td>HIST1H3B</td>
<td>HRAS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID3</td>
<td>IGH</td>
<td>IK</td>
<td>IGL</td>
<td>IKBKE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IKKalpha</td>
<td>IKKbeta</td>
<td>IKGamma</td>
<td>IL7R</td>
<td>IRF1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFR3</td>
<td>JAK3</td>
<td>JUN</td>
<td>KHL6</td>
<td>KMT2A (MLL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KMT2B</td>
<td>KMT2C (MLL2)</td>
<td>KRAS</td>
<td>LEF1</td>
<td>LILRB1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LYN</td>
<td>MAF</td>
<td>MALT1</td>
<td>MAP2K2</td>
<td>MAP2K4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAP3K1</td>
<td>MAP3K14</td>
<td>MAP3K6</td>
<td>MAP3K7</td>
<td>MAPK1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCL1</td>
<td>MDM2</td>
<td>MDM4</td>
<td>MED12</td>
<td>MEF2B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEF2C</td>
<td>MET</td>
<td>MUC2</td>
<td>MYC</td>
<td>MYCN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NF1</td>
<td>NF2</td>
<td>NFAT</td>
<td>NFKBIA</td>
<td>NFE1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTCH2</td>
<td>NOTCH1</td>
<td>NPM1</td>
<td>NRAS</td>
<td>NTRK2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTRK3</td>
<td>P2RY8</td>
<td>PAX5</td>
<td>PCLO</td>
<td>PDCD1 (PD-1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD274 (PD-L1)</td>
<td>PDCD1LG2 (PD-L2)</td>
<td>PDCD1LG3</td>
<td>PDCD4</td>
<td>PIK3CA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PK3CG</td>
<td>PK3CG</td>
<td>PK3R1</td>
<td>PK3R2</td>
<td>PIM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLc gamma 2</td>
<td>POL2F2</td>
<td>PRD1M</td>
<td>PRK2D</td>
<td>PTK2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTPN1</td>
<td>RAF</td>
<td>RASSF1</td>
<td>RB1</td>
<td>RET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHO2</td>
<td>RUNK1</td>
<td>SETBP1</td>
<td>SETD2</td>
<td>SF3B1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SF3B1</td>
<td>SKF</td>
<td>SGK1</td>
<td>SMAD2</td>
<td>SMAD4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMARCA1</td>
<td>SMARCA4</td>
<td>SMARCAL1</td>
<td>SMARC2</td>
<td>SMARC1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOCS1</td>
<td>SOCS2</td>
<td>SOCS3</td>
<td>SOX10</td>
<td>STAT5B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT1</td>
<td>STAT2</td>
<td>STAT4</td>
<td>STAT5A</td>
<td>STAT5B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT6</td>
<td>TCF3</td>
<td>TCL1A</td>
<td>TET1</td>
<td>TET2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TET3</td>
<td>TLL2</td>
<td>TNFAIP3</td>
<td>TNFRSF11A</td>
<td>TNFRSF14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNFRSF3</td>
<td>TRAF2</td>
<td>TRAF3</td>
<td>TRAF5</td>
<td>TSC1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSC2</td>
<td>TYK2</td>
<td>WIF</td>
<td>WT1</td>
<td>XBP1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTNNB1</td>
<td>GSK3B</td>
<td>PDK1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NGS, next-generation sequencing.

30% of non-GCB–type DLBCL, more than half of primary cutaneous DLBCL (leg type), and many DLBCL at immune-privileged sites, but not in plasma cell myeloma, even of IgM type. IG/IRF4 fusions are associated with a distinct subgroup of germinal center B-cell lymphomas composed of follicular lymphoma (FL) grade 3 or (centroblastic) DLBCL characterized by coexpression of MUM1 and BCL6 in the absence of PRDM1/BLIMP1, a specific gene expression profile, and a disease onset predominantly in childhood or young adulthood.39 A new provisional entity designated Burkitt-like lymphoma with 11q aberration has a chromosome 11q alteration characterized by proximal gains and telomeric losses, but without MYC rearrangement.60,61

Prognostic and predictive marker

TP53, NOTCH1, SF3B1, and BIRC3, are of clinical interest because of their adverse prognostic implications in chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) and also because some are potential direct or indirect therapeutic targets.62,63 TP53 mutations are present in 10.6% of CLL, ATM mutations in 11.1%, SF3B1 mutations in 12.6%, NOTCH1 mutations in 21.8%, and BIRC3 mutations in 4.2%. The ATM-p53 DNA damage response pathway plays a crucial role in chemoresistance in CLL, as indicated by the adverse prognostic impact of deletions of 17p (focus of TP53) and 11q (focus of ATM) detected by FISH analysis.64 BIRC3 is a negative regulator of noncanonical nuclear factor κB (NF-κB) signaling. BIRC3 disruption by inactivating mutations and/or gene deletions selectively affects fludarabine-refractory CLL cases.65

MCL is also characterized by having mutations affecting many different genes including ATM (40%–75%), CCND1 (35%), and TP53 (28%).60 Mutations of NOTCH1 and NOTCH2 occur in less than 10% of cases and are identified in a subset of tumors with more adverse biological features including blastoid/plasmacytic morphology. NOTCH1 and NOTCH2 have prognostic impact and potential therapeutic importance in MCL.66

Mutations or copy number losses of TP53 genes are independent unfavorable prognostic factors in different types of B-cell lymphomas.67 CD58 gene encodes a molecule involved in T and natural killer (NK)-cell-mediated responses. In addition to TP53, mutations or copy number losses of CD58 in DLBCL are independent unfavorable prognostic factors.68 Recurrent mutations of the exportin 1 gene (XPO1) have been observed in primary mediastinal B-cell lymphoma and Hodgkin lymphoma and they have prognostic implication.69,70 TET2 is a tumor suppressor gene and frequently mutated in a variety of T or NK-cell lymphoma. TET2 mutation is associated with advanced-
stage disease, thrombocytopenia, high international prognostic index scores, and a shorter progression-free survival.71,72

**Therapeutic targets**

Much has been learned about the mutational landscape of malignant lymphomas. Genes identified in NGS analysis are important in the development and progression of malignant lymphoma and are potential therapeutic targets although drugs are currently available for only some of these targets. Genes involved in BCR signaling which converges to mitogen-activated protein kinase pathway, NF-κB pathway, and phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K) pathway are therapeutic targets of B-cell lymphomas (Fig. 6). These include CD79A/B, SYK, and SFK of BCR signaling pathway, BTK, PKCβ, CARD11, MALT1, BCL10, IKKβ, IKKβ, and IKKγ of NF-κB pathway, and PI3K, AKT, and mammalian target of rapamycin of PI3K pathway.73 Most active clinical trials are targeting these genes. Mutations of chromatin regulator/modifier genes, such as CREBBP, KMT2D (MLL2), and EZH2 are extremely common early events and may be potential therapeutic targets.74-77 Chromosomal rearrangements of DUSP22 and TP63 were identified in 30% and 8% of anaplastic lymphoma kinase (ALK)–negative anaplastic large cell lymphoma (ALCL), respectively.78 ALCLs with DUSP22 rearrangements show significant differences from other ALK-negative ALCLs, typically showing sheets of hallmark cells with doughnut cells and a few large pleomorphic cells.78,79

Rearrangements of RHOA (6%), and CTNNB1 (6%) (Fig. 7).80-85 Although mutations of RHOA, CD28, and CTLA4-CD28 fusion themselves have no prognostic impact, targeting of TCR-related events may hold promise for the treatment of TFF-derived lymphomas. SYK-ITK fusion is detected in peripheral T-cell lymphoma (PTCL)-NOS, orAITL. The fusion kinase ITK-SYK mimics a TCR signal and drives oncogenesis in conditional mouse models of PTCL.86,87 IDH2 mutation is frequently identified in AITL (19%–42%), but not in other types of T- or NK-cell lymphoma. These mutations alter IDH enzymatic function, resulting in the accumulation of D-2-hydroxyglutarate (D-2-HG) in cells and tissues. D-2-HG may act as an oncometabolite, driving tumor progression and affect hypoxia signaling (prolyl hydroxylases), histone methylation, and DNA methylation.88,89 Genes involved in JAK-STAT pathway are frequently mutated in extranodal NK/T-cell lymphoma, including STAT3 (most common), STAT5B, JAK3, and JAK1. Other commonly mutated genes include histone modification-related genes such as BCOR and MLL2, RNA helicase DDX3, and P53.90,91 All these genes are important in the progression of NK/T-cell lymphoma and may be potential therapeutic targets. In addition to these genes, there are genes with inhibitors available, which are being tried in clinical trials.

**Samples for targeted sequencing**

FFPE sample is available for targeted sequencing. Single nucleotide variants and copy number alteration can be detected using DNA extracted from FFPE tissue and the translocation can be identified by RNA sequencing using FFPE samples. In general, lymphoma is often highly cellular; therefore, DNA extracted from FFPE sample is sufficient to obtain sequencing data, although there is a variation in the minimum requirement of DNA amount according to the NGS platform. Before starting the test, development of optimum operating procedure in each laboratory is mandatory.
CONCLUSION

Molecular diagnostics for B- and T-cell clonality test and cytogenetic test for malignant lymphoma have been much improved and introduced in routine clinical practice. In addition, determination of COO in DLBCL and NGS-based tests for genetic alterations in malignant lymphomas will open a pathway toward personalized medicine and targeted therapy in the near future.

Conflicts of Interest
No potential conflict of interest relevant to this article was reported.

Acknowledgments
The authors would like to thank all the executive officers of the Hematopathology Study Group of the Korean Society of Pathologists for careful review and discussion on this manuscript. This research was supported by The Korean Society of Pathologists Grant (2016).

REFERENCES

7. Sherwood AM, Desmarais C, Livingston RJ, et al. Deep sequencing...


Molecular Testing of Lung Cancers

Hyo Sup Shim · Yoon-La Choi1
Lucia Kim2 · Sunhee Chang3
Wan-Seop Kim4 · Mee Sook Roh5
Tae-Jung Kim6 · Seung Yeon Ha7
Jin-Haeng Chung8 · Se Jin Jang9
Geon Kook Lee10 · The Korean Cardiopulmonary Pathology Study Group · The Korean Molecular Pathology Study Group

Department of Pathology, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Seoul; 1Department of Pathology and Translational Genomics, Samsung Medical Center, Sungkyunkwan University School of Medicine, Seoul; 2Department of Pathology, Inha University School of Medicine, Incheon; 3Department of Pathology, Inje University Ilsan Paik Hospital, Inje University, Goyang; 4Department of Pathology, Konkuk University School of Medicine, Seoul; 5Department of Pathology, Dong-A University College of Medicine, Busan; 6Department of Pathology, College of Medicine, The Catholic University of Korea, Seoul; 7Department of Pathology, Gachon University Gil Medical Center, Incheon; 8Department of Pathology, Seoul National University Bundang Hospital, Seongnam; 9Department of Pathology, Asan Medical Center, University of Ulsan College of Medicine, Seoul; 10Department of Pathology, National Cancer Center, Goyang, Korea

Targeted therapies guided by molecular diagnostics have become a standard treatment of lung cancer. Epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) mutations and anaplastic lymphoma kinase (ALK) rearrangements are currently used as the best predictive biomarkers for EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitors and ALK inhibitors, respectively. Besides EGFR and ALK, the list of druggable genetic alterations has been growing, including ROS1 rearrangements, RET rearrangements, and MET alterations. In this situation, pathologists should carefully manage clinical samples for molecular testing and should do their best to quickly and accurately identify patients who will benefit from precision therapeutics. Here, we grouped molecular biomarkers of lung cancers into three categories—mutations, gene rearrangements, and amplifications—and propose expanded guidelines on molecular testing of lung cancers.

Key Words: Lung neoplasms; Molecular testing; Guideline; Precision medicine

Molecular diagnostics-guided targeted therapies have become a standard treatment for patients with lung cancer.1 Driver genetic alterations such as epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) mutations and anaplastic lymphoma kinase (ALK) rearrangements are currently used as predictive biomarkers for EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKIs) and ALK inhibitors, respectively.1 Since Korean guideline recommendations for EGFR and ALK molecular testing were published,2,3 the list of druggable genetic alterations has been growing as tremendous amounts of information on the cancer genome are becoming...
Molecular Testing of Lung Cancers

Available (Table 1). Molecular analyses of various biomarkers in tumor tissue or cytology specimens have become standard laboratory tests for the clinical management of lung cancers. In this context, an updated and more comprehensive set of guidelines is necessary.

In this article, we propose expanded guidelines for molecular testing of lung cancers including recently updated genetic alterations and well-known biomarkers. Here, we grouped molecular biomarkers into three categories—mutations, gene rearrangements, and amplifications (Fig. 1)—and reviewed the background, indications, methods, reporting, test validations, and quality assurance for each category.

### MOLECULAR TESTING

**Mutations including EGFR, KRAS, BRAF, HER2, and MET**

**Background**

Activating somatic mutations including point substitution, small insertion, and in-frame deletion are major oncogenic drivers in lung cancer. The discovery of activating EGFR mutations and their close relation with the response to EGFR TKIs opened the new era of precision medicine. Since then, clinical trials have confirmed that EGFR mutations are the best predictive factor of EGFR TKI efficacy. EGFR mutations have been more frequently found in lung adenocarcinomas in Asian populations than Western populations. The overall EGFR mutation rate is approximately up to 46% among Korean patients with adenocarcinoma. More than 90% of sensitizing EGFR mutations are composed of an in-frame deletion in exon 19 and a point mutation (L858R) in exon 21. Nonetheless, most patients experience disease progression usually after 12 months of treatment. A variety of mechanisms are involved in acquired resistance to EGFR TKIs. Among these, the most common resistance mechanism is the T790M mutation in EGFR, constituting 50%–60% of cases. Recently, osimertinib was approved for the treatment of T790M-positive lung cancers in Asian populations; Western populations.

![Fig. 1. Three categories of molecular biomarkers used in these guidelines. EGFR, epidermal growth factor receptor; ALK, anaplastic lymphoma kinase; FGFR, fibroblast growth factor receptor.](https://doi.org/10.4132/jptm.2017.04.10)

---

**Table 1. Targetable genetic alterations in lung cancer**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Representative subtypes or variants</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Targeted agents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mutations</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGFR</td>
<td>Exon 19 deletion, exon 21 L858R, exon 20 T790M</td>
<td>40%–50% in ADCs&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; 10%–20% in ADCs&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Gefitinib, erlotinib, afatinib, osimertinib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KRAS</td>
<td>G12X, G13X, G61X</td>
<td>5%–10% in ADCs&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; 20%–30% in ADCs&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>MEK inhibitors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRAF</td>
<td>V600E</td>
<td>1%–4% in ADCs</td>
<td>Vemurafenib, dabrafenib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HER2</td>
<td>p.A775 G776insYVMA in exon 20</td>
<td>1%–2% in ADCs</td>
<td>Trastuzumab, afatinib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MET</td>
<td>Splice site mutations or in exon 14</td>
<td>3%–4% in ADCs</td>
<td>Crizotinib, cabozantinib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gene fusions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALK</td>
<td>EML4-ALK, TGF-ALK, KIF5B-ALK</td>
<td>5% in ADCs</td>
<td>Crizotinib, ceritinib, alecinib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROS1</td>
<td>CD74-ROS1, EZR-ROS1, SLC34A2-ROS1, SDC4-ROS1</td>
<td>1% in ADCs</td>
<td>Crizotinib, ceritinib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RET</td>
<td>KIF5B-RET, CCDC6-RET</td>
<td>1% in ADCs</td>
<td>Cabozantinib, vandetanib, alecinib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTRK1</td>
<td>MAPRIP-NTRK1 and CD74-NTRK1, TPM3-NTRK1</td>
<td>&lt;1% in ADCs</td>
<td>Entrectinib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FGFR1/3</td>
<td>FGFR3-TACC3, BAG4-FGFR1</td>
<td>1% in NSCLCs</td>
<td>FGFR inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRG1</td>
<td>CD74-NRG1, SLC32A-NRG1, VAMP2-NRG1</td>
<td>7% in mucinous ADCs</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amplifications</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FGFR1</td>
<td>Gene amplification</td>
<td>13%–22% in SQCs</td>
<td>FGFR inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGFR</td>
<td>Gene amplification</td>
<td>8%–9% in SQCs</td>
<td>FGFR inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MET</td>
<td>Gene amplification</td>
<td>2%–4% in ADCs</td>
<td>Crizotinib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HER2</td>
<td>Gene amplification</td>
<td>1%–2% in ADCs</td>
<td>Trastuzumab, afatinib</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ADC, adenocarcinoma; NSCLC, non-small cell lung carcinoma; FGFR, fibroblast growth factor receptor; NA, not available; SQC, squamous cell carcinoma; EGFR, epidermal growth factor receptor.

<sup>a</sup>Asian populations; <sup>b</sup>Western populations.
Korea. The acquired EGFR C797S mutation has been reported to mediate resistance to osimertinib in a subset of EGFR T790M–positive non-small cell lung carcinomas (NSCLCs). Thus, EGFR mutation testing covering sensitizing as well as nonsensitizing mutations has become the most important step in treatment decision-making for lung cancer patients because of the high frequency of EGFR mutations and the availability of targeted therapeutic agents.

The frequency of KRAS mutations has been reported to be 8%–15% in lung adenocarcinoma among Korean patients. Unfortunately, targeted therapies thus far have been unsuccessful. KRAS mutations are known as negative predictive markers of a poor response to EGFR TKIs. In addition, a KRAS mutation has been reported to be a poor prognostic factor. This also appears to be dependent both on the specific KRAS codon mutation and disease stage at the time of diagnosis. Invasive mucinous adenocarcinomas show a high incidence of KRAS mutations.

Besides EGFR mutations, other targetable mutations have been found although their frequency is low. A BRAF mutation has been found in 3%–4% of lung adenocarcinomas in Western patients. Among never-smoker Korean women with lung cancer, the frequency of tumor BRAF mutation is 1%. The V600E mutation constitutes only 50% of BRAF mutations in contrast to other cancers (such as melanoma and papillary thyroid carcinoma). Vemurafenib and dabrafenib show clinical activity in BRAF V600E-mutant NSCLC. HER2 mutations are present in approximately 1%–2% of lung adenocarcinomas. The most common mutation is an in-frame insertion within exon 20. The exon 20 insertion results in increased HER2 kinase activity. The clinical response to HER2-targeting agents, such as trastuzumab and afatinib, is observed in patients with lung cancer harboring a HER2 mutation.

Recently, MET splice site mutations have emerged as targetable oncogenic drivers. Oncogenic mutations in the MET exon 14 splice sites (these mutations cause exon 14 skipping) occur in 3%–4% of lung adenocarcinomas. Patients with lung cancer harboring MET exon 14 skipping show a clinical response to MET inhibitors including crizotinib.

Indications

The important reason for molecular testing of lung cancers is to select patients who may benefit from targeted therapies. In addition, patients with lung cancer can get benefits from molecular testing of their tumors regardless of stage. For example, molecular testing can provide accurate information on staging (in case of multiple tumors), prognostic stratification, and prompt treatment in case of recurrence. Because of the high frequency of EGFR mutations in Asian populations as mentioned above, EGFR mutation testing is especially important for the treatment of Korean lung cancer patients. The Korean Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved only EGFR molecular testing from among five genes important for decision-making with respect to first-line chemotherapy during standard treatment. Other mutations can also be approved and used as predictive markers in the near future. Each mutation is significantly associated with some clinical factors or histological subtypes. Nevertheless, clinical findings alone cannot completely predict specific mutation status.

Methodology

Methods

A variety of methods can be used for detecting mutations including direct sequencing, real-time polymerase chain reaction (PCR), and commercial kits (Table 2). Pathologists should consider the available approaches and the advantages and disadvantages of each method, including analytical sensitivity and turnaround time. In addition, new technologies for molecular testing must be approved by the Korean government before incorporation into clinical practice.

Direct sequencing is considered the gold standard for mutation analysis. On the other hand, direct DNA sequencing requires a high ratio of tumor tissue to normal tissue (more than 50% tumor content) for reliable results. In contrast, PCR-based methods show high sensitivity, requiring mutant DNA content of only 1%. Nevertheless, these PCR-based methods can detect only previously known mutations or targeted sites. PCR-based methods including the peptide nucleic acid–mediated PCR
clamping method and allele-specific PCR method have been approved in Korea. Among the targetable mutations, EGFR mutations have been the most studied in the field of lung cancer. In studies comparing two representative methods, clinical outcomes are not significantly different among groups harboring EGFR mutations detected by direct sequencing or by PCR-based methods.\textsuperscript{40,41} Highly sensitive methods may also be useful for the detection of EGFR mutations associated with acquired resistance, e.g., T790M.\textsuperscript{15} As with the EGFR mutation, direct sequencing or real-time PCR can be used for the detection of KRAS, BRAF, and HER2 mutations, which include a point mutation or small indel. In the case of MET exon 14 alterations, most alterations are a point mutation or indel, affecting the splice acceptor site, splice donor site, or the approximately 25-base pair (bp) intronic noncoding region. In rare cases, however, whole-exon deletions of MET exon 14 have been reported.\textsuperscript{42} A DNA-based method including direct sequencing is possible, but the mRNA-based method including real-time PCR is better at detecting MET exon 14 skipping.

As targetable genetic alterations are increasingly discovered, individual genotyping may become relatively inefficient and costly. Thus, next-generation sequencing (NGS) technology with DNA or RNA is reported to be useful for multiplexed and deep genomic sequencing.\textsuperscript{30,44} Especially, targeted deep sequencing of selected gene sets (a so-called cancer panel) is approaching integration into daily clinical practice. Nonetheless, due to the methodological complexity of NGS, analytical validation and quality control are crucial for implementation in routine practice. Furthermore, to become a companion diagnostic assay, an NGS-based method should be comparatively validated with previous companion diagnostics.

Sample types

As previously described in our proposed guideline, small biopsy and cytology samples are used for mutation testing.\textsuperscript{2} In particular, all samples obtained from a variety of methods are acceptable, including transbronchial lung biopsy, endobronchial ultrasound-guided transbronchial needle aspiration, bronchial brushing or washing, computed tomography-guided gun biopsy or needle aspiration, and pleural fluid sampling.\textsuperscript{34,45,46} The results using cytology samples are highly concordant with those of the corresponding tissue samples, especially with more sensitive methods.\textsuperscript{45,47}

Since most driver mutations develop in early steps of carcinogenesis, tumor samples from either primary masses or metastatic lesions are equally suitable for mutation testing.\textsuperscript{48} In the case of multiple primary lung cancers, each tumor may be tested.\textsuperscript{49}

Formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded (FFPE) tissues are most frequently used in molecular testing. Routinely prepared FFPE tissues are the most practical resource for molecular analysis, in spite of fixation-related artifacts.\textsuperscript{50} The optimal fixative for preparing FFPE samples is generally 10% neutral-buffered formalin.\textsuperscript{14} The optimal fixation time ranges from 6 to 72 hours to avoid underfixation or overfixation, respectively.\textsuperscript{14,50} Routinely prepared cytology samples such as alcohol-fixed smears or Thin Prep slides\textsuperscript{45,47} and cell block samples\textsuperscript{51} are also suitable for mutation testing.

Because obtaining a tissue sample from bronchoscopy or a transthoracic needle biopsy is difficult and nonrepeatable, a liquid biopsy, which contains circulating tumor DNA, circulating tumor cells, or exosomes using plasma or body fluids, has recently been attracting attention as a new source for identification of somatic mutations.\textsuperscript{32,51} Nonetheless, due to the high rate of false negative results at present, negative results require a tissue biopsy to determine exact mutation status.\textsuperscript{51}

Sample requirements

Pathologists must confirm the presence of tumor cells in a sample before mutation analysis. The percentage and quality of tumor cells are crucial for proper mutation testing. For example, direct sequencing requires at least 20% tumor cells in the sample for reliable testing result. Thus, evaluation of the percentage of tumor cells (tumor purity) in a given sample is highly recommended, especially for less sensitive methods. Tumor dissection may be used to increase the tumor content if required. Thus, as

\begin{table}
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{Category} & \textbf{Mutation} & \textbf{Gene rearrangement} & \textbf{Amplification} \\
\hline
DNA & Direct sequencing & FISH & FISH \\
 & PCR-based methods & NGS & qPCR \\
 & NGS & & NGS \\
\hline
RNA & RT-PCR (fusion transcript) & & Real-time PCR (mRNA overexpression) \\
 & NGS & & \\
\hline
Protein & IHC (mutation-specific antibody) & IHC (protein expression) & IHC (protein overexpression) \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{Representative methods categorized by mechanisms of oncogene activation and by targeted molecules}
\end{table}
Gene rearrangements including ALK, ROS1, RET, NTRK1, NRG1, and FGFR

**Background**

Since the discovery of a transforming fusion gene between echinoderm microtubule-associated protein-like 4 (EMLA) and ALK in 2007, the list of targetable gene fusions in lung cancer has been growing. Although the prevalence of each gene fusion is low (approximately 1%–5%), molecularly tailored treatments have resulted in dramatic clinical responses. The presence of an ALK rearrangement and ROS1 proto-oncogene receptor tyrosine kinase (ROS1) rearrangement in lung cancer has become the best predictor of response to crizotinib. Subsequently, RET proto-oncogene (RET) fusions were found comprising 1% of lung adenocarcinomas. Cabozantinib or vandetanib showed clinical activity against lung cancer harboring RET fusions. Besides ALK, ROS1, and RET fusions, NTRK1 and fibroblast growth factor receptor (FGFR) 1/3 fusions were reported in lung cancer, which are expected to give a therapeutic opportunity to patients with no known driver alterations. Of note, NRG1 fusions were predominantly found in invasive mucinous adenocarcinoma, which is a unique variant of lung adenocarcinoma.

**Indications**

Clinical characteristics associated with gene fusions such as ALK, ROS1, RET, and NTRK1 are adenocarcinoma histological features, never- or light-smoking history, and younger age. Nevertheless, not all gene fusions have these characteristics. FGFR fusions are associated with smoking history. Therefore, clinical characteristics alone cannot determine gene rearrangement testing.

Histological type is an important factor in determining whether to perform genetic analysis or which genes to test. Most targetable gene fusions are discovered in NSCLCs. Because ALK, ROS1, and RET fusions are predominantly found in adenocarcinomas or NSCLCs with an adenocarcinoma component, pathologists should try to further classify NSCLCs into more specific subtypes. On the other hand, FGFR fusions can be found in adenocarcinomas and SQCs.

**Methodology**

Methods

Several methods are currently available for assessing gene rearrangement, including fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH), immunohistochemistry (IHC), reverse-transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR), and NGS (Table 2).

Break apart FISH is the currently standard method for the detection of gene rearrangements. Although the FISH assay requires technical expertise and experience for interpretation, this assay is reasonably sensitive and specific for the detection of...
gene rearrangements regardless of fusion partners. The pathologist should recognize the probe design, especially which sides are labeled with a red and green signal and the positive criteria. Crizotinib, a first generation ALK inhibitor, was approved by the United States FDA in conjunction with a companion diagnostic FISH test (ALK Break Apart FISH Probe Kit, Abbott Molecular Inc.). Positive criteria for the Abbott FISH probe kit are as follows. Positive signals are defined as separate signals or a single red signal. Initially, 50 tumor cells are counted. A sample is considered positive if >25 cells out of 50 (>25/50 or >50%) test positive. A sample is considered equivocal if 5 to 25 cells (10 to 50%) test positive. If the sample is equivocal, a second reader should evaluate the slide. The first and second cell count readings are added up, and a percentage is calculated out of 100 cells. If the percentage of positive cells is ≥15% (≥15/100), the sample is considered positive. The Korean FDA also approved the ALK FISH as a selection test for crizotinib treatment in lung cancer patients.

Because protein expression can serve as a surrogate marker of gene rearrangements, IHC is useful for screening of gene rearrangements when it is appropriately validated.66-68 In particular, ALK IHC was extensively studied and validated.7 Among ALK IHC antibodies, 5A4 and D5F3 appear to be superior to the ALK1 antibody for detecting ALK-rearranged lung cancer.69,70 IHC can effectively predict ALK fusion status because lung adenocarcinoma in general does not express the ALK protein without genetic alterations. The VENTANA ALK (D5F3) CDx Assay was approved by the U.S. FDA for identification of patients eligible for treatment with crizotinib. Other antibodies are not validated as companion diagnostics; therefore, their use should be limited to a screening step within controlled settings.

Besides ALK, there are no approved companion diagnostics for other gene rearrangements. Break apart FISH is generally used to detect gene rearrangements in clinical samples, and IHC can serve as a screening method.

In terms of mRNA expression, the RT-PCR assay is used to find fusion transcripts with unique sequences. RT-PCR methods are generally known to be sensitive.71 Nonetheless, RT-PCR has some limitations in clinical practice. Primer design requires information about fusion partners and breakpoints. Thus, only known fusion variants can be detected. In addition, most materials for molecular testing are FFPE samples, where RNAs can be severely degraded compared to fresh frozen tissue. Nevertheless, RT-PCR can be useful when only cytology samples are available.71

The NGS technology has emerged as an alternative to the detection of gene rearrangements. It can simultaneously detect a variety of gene fusions using targeted DNA sequencing or RNA sequencing.72,44 The sensitivity and specificity for calling a gene fusion mainly depend on the detection algorithm. The NGS-based gene rearrangement method should be vigorously validated before implementation in routine practice. Furthermore, to become a companion diagnostic test, an NGS-based method should be comparatively validated with previous companion diagnostics.

Sample type

A variety of biopsy specimens can be used for gene rearrangement testing as described above in the section on mutation testing. Previous studies have shown that cytology samples are suitable for gene rearrangement analysis, especially as validated in ALK fusion testing.72 The cell block is usually first used if there are enough tumor cells in the block. Smear slides can also be used for the detection of gene rearrangement.72 Thus, both tissue and cytology samples are acceptable for gene rearrangement testing, if appropriately validated. Details were described in the previous guideline.3

Sample requirements

For adequate evaluation of break apart FISH, a minimum of 50 to 100 well-preserved tumor cells are required. Tumor purity is not as critical for FISH tests, however, it is necessary to choose areas of a slide in which the viable tumor cells are most abundant. Because a dark-field fluorescence microscope does not provide perfect visualization of tumor morphology, the pathologist should determine whether the selected area contains a sufficient number of tumor cells and should interpret the result carefully by distinguishing between cancer cells and intimately mixed non-neoplastic cells.

As for RT-PCR and NGS technologies, the tumor percentage can be critical in gene rearrangement testing as described in mutation testing. The pathologist should verify the quality of the sample and the presence of tumor cells. Tumor dissection may be used to increase the tumor content if required.

Reporting

Reports on gene rearrangement testing should contain identification of the patient (pathology number, hospital unit number, age, and gender), requesting physician with department, receipt day, report day, sample used for the testing (site or organ, sample type, and tumor purity), methodology used, detectable fusion variants, test results (negativity or positivity for the gene
rearrangement), comments on results, and names of the testing technician and corresponding pathologist. We recommend reporting the additional details in the case of a FISH test: information on probe design, total number of counted nuclei, and percentage of the tumor nuclei showing positive signals (split signal or isolated signal containing a kinase domain).³

Validation of the test

General principles are similar to those of mutation testing. Technical and clinical validation procedures should be carried out when the testing is set up in the laboratory. One of the references is indexes of the evaluation from the Korean Institute of Genomic Testing Evaluation.

Pathologists should recognize the limitations of each methodology. With respect to the break apart FISH test, repeat examination can be considered in cases of poor signals, atypical signal patterns (including predominantly isolated 5’ signals), a borderline range that approached the 15% cutoff line, results not matching well-validated IHC, or concurrent detection of driver mutations. Other types of methods may be useful in equivocal cases.

Quality assurance

There is an external quality control program for ALK fusion testing from the Korean Institute of Genomic Testing Evaluation and the Korean Society of Pathologists. To improve the reliability of assays for detecting gene rearrangements, a regular quality control program should be performed, and the results of molecular testing can be confirmed by different diagnostic assays, such as validated IHC.

Amplifications including FGFR1, EGFR, MET, and HER2

Background

Gene amplification is an important mechanism for oncogene activation. HER2-targeting therapy has been implemented in breast and gastric cancer on the basis of molecular testing for HER2. Amplifications of several genes have been studied in lung cancer.

FGFR1 is one of the most commonly amplified genes in human cancers. Amplified FGFR1 has been described in 13%–22% of lung SQCs.⁷⁵-⁷⁴ It is expected to become a promising targetable alteration in lung SQCs because there are no known targeted therapeutic agents for SQCs.⁷⁵ In vivo studies have revealed that inhibition of the FGFR1 pathway with FGFR inhibitors leads to significant tumor shrinkage, suggesting that FGFR inhibitors might be an effective therapeutic option in SQCs with FGFR1 amplification.⁷⁷ Nevertheless, clinical trials of FGFR inhibitors were not impressive.⁷⁸ Additional biomarkers should be studied to predict the drug response to FGFR inhibitors.⁷⁷ A study showed that homogeneous high-level amplification was associated more strongly with a clinical response to FGFR inhibition.⁷⁸ Thus, FGFR1 amplification can still be a promising candidate for targeted therapy.

EGFR amplifications were found in adenocarcinomas and SQCs. Initially, EGFR amplification was regarded as a predictive biomarker of EGFR TKI treatment.⁷⁹ Subsequent studies revealed that EGFR amplification was closely related to EGFR mutation, and EGFR mutation was the strongest predictive marker of the response to EGFR TKIs.⁸⁰ Among SQCs, EGFR high copy number gains/amplifications were present in 8%–9% of cases.⁸¹ Patients with lung SQC harboring an EGFR high copy number gains or amplifications showed a higher response rate to EGFR TKIs.⁸¹

De novo MET amplification was present in 2%–4% of lung adenocarcinomas.⁸² NSCLC patients with de novo MET amplification showed a rapid and durable response to crizotinib.⁸³⁸⁴ MET amplification was also identified as one of the acquired secondary resistance mechanisms in patients with EGFR mutations who progressed on EGFR TKIs.¹²¹⁵

De novo HER2 amplification was found to be present in 1%–2% of lung adenocarcinomas.⁷ NSCLC patients with de novo HER2 amplification can be treated with HER2-targeting agents.⁸⁵ HER2 amplification was also identified as one of the acquired secondary resistance mechanisms in patients with EGFR mutations who progress on EGFR TKIs.¹⁸⁸⁶

Indications

Amplifications of receptor tyrosine kinase genes are present in lung cancers regardless of histological subtypes, while the frequencies are different. Thus, these gene amplifications can be examined in patients with lung cancer, especially previously targetable oncoprotein-negative cases. FGFR1 amplification is especially meaningful for SQCs.

EGFR amplification can serve as a predictive marker of SQCs. MET and HER2 amplification can be examined in the primary tumors or tumors with acquired resistance to TKIs.

Methodology

Method

Several methods can be used for detection of gene amplifications (Table 2). FISH using a locus-specific intensifier (LSI) gene
and a chromosome-specific centromere (CEP) probe is a standard method for the detection of gene amplifications. Although the FISH assay requires technical expertise and experience for interpretation, this method has the advantage of being able to evaluate gene amplification by selecting only cancer cells.

FISH-positive criteria have been used according to the corresponding genes. FGFR1 high-level amplification is defined as copy number ≥9 or (1) an FGFR1/CEP7 ratio of ≥2.0, (2) the average number of FGFR1 signals per tumor cell nucleus ≥6, and (3) the percentage of tumor cells containing ≥15 FGFR1 signals or large clusters ≥10%.4 There is an external quality control program for FISH/SISH testing (for example, Quality assurance - Testing Evaluation. General principles are similar to those described above in the section on break apart FISH testing.

Sample type

Various biopsy samples can be used for amplification testing as in other molecular testing methods described above. Samples routinely consist of FFPE tissues. Tumor tissues from either primary tumors or metastatic lesions can be equally available for molecular testing especially regarding high-level homogeneous amplification.31 Cytology samples can be used with quantitative real-time PCR or NGS.

Sample requirements

Regarding the in situ hybridization method, a minimum of 50 to 100 tumor cells are required. General principles are similar to those described above in the section on break apart FISH testing.

Reporting

Reports on gene amplification testing should contain identification of the patient (pathology number, hospital unit number, age, and gender), requesting physician with department, receipt day, report day, sample used for the testing (site or organ, sample type, and tumor purity), methodology used, test results (negativity or positivity for the gene amplification according to proposed criteria), comments on results, and names of the testing technician and corresponding pathologist. Additional information can be included in the case of in situ hybridization: the total number of counted nuclei, gene/CEP ratio, average copy number, or findings according to special diagnostic criteria.

Validation of a test

Analytical and clinical validation procedures should be conducted when the testing is set up in the laboratory. One of the references is indexes of evaluation from the Korean Institute of Genomic Testing Evaluation. General principles are similar to the ASCO/CAP guidelines for dual-probe in situ hybridization.

None-
Table 3. A summary of recommendations for molecular testing of lung cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indications</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mutations</td>
<td>Do: adenocarcinoma, large cell carcinoma, NSCLC-NOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Consider: at a young age, never smokers or small biopsy samples or mixed histological features</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gene rearrangements</td>
<td>Do: adenocarcinoma, large cell carcinoma, NSCLC-NOS for most gene fusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Consider: at a young age, never smokers or small biopsy samples or mixed histological features</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Squamous cell carcinoma for FGFR fusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All types if clinically indicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gene amplifications</td>
<td>All types if clinically indicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Squamous cell carcinoma for FGFR1 amplification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adenocarcinoma, NSCLC-NOS for MET or HER2 amplifications</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Method | An appropriate method should be selected according to genetic alterations. |
|        | The pathologist should consider the pros and cons of each method. |

| Type of specimen | Histological and cytological samples are both acceptable. |
|                 | Either a primary tumor or a metastatic lesion is equally suitable. |
|                 | In cases of multiple, synchronous primary lung adenocarcinomas, each tumor may be tested. |

| Specimen requirements | The presence of tumor cells must be verified by a pathologist. |
|                       | High percentage (ideally more than 50%) of tumor cells for direct sequencing |
|                       | Lower percentage acceptable for methods with higher sensitivity |
|                       | A minimum of 50–100 assessable tumor cells are required for a FISH assay. |

| Reporting | Patients and sample information, material used for analysis, type of method, results of the test, comments, names of the testing technician and corresponding pathologist |
|           | Analytical and clinical validation procedures should be conducted when the testing is set up in the laboratory. |
|           | A combination of more than one method may be useful in equivocal cases. |

| Validation of test | New methods must be approved by the Korean government. |

| Quality assurance | Quality assurance program (internal or external quality control) should be implemented. |

NSCLC-NOS, non-small cell lung carcinoma not otherwise specified; FGFR, fibroblast growth factor receptor; FISH, fluorescence in situ hybridization.

We proposed guideline recommendations for molecular testing according to three categories of genetic alterations in lung cancer (summarized in Table 3). Molecular diagnostics for targetable genetic alterations have become the standard of care in the management of lung cancer patients (Fig. 2). In addition, immunotherapy has emerged as a new therapeutic option for patients who do not have targetable alterations (Fig. 2). Both therapeutic approaches require pathological diagnosis based on molecular biomarker assessment. Therefore, pathologists should carefully manage clinical samples for molecular testing and should do their best to quickly and accurately identify patients who will benefit from precision therapeutics. Each pathology department should fully validate the detection methods and should also participate in a quality control and formal proficiency testing program.

**Conflicts of Interest**

No potential conflict of interest relevant to this article was reported.
Acknowledgments

This research was supported by The Korean Society of Pathologists Grant (2016).

REFERENCES


80. Soh J, Okumura N, Lockwood WW, et al. Oncogene mutations, copy number gains and mutant allele specific imbalance (MASI)
Clinicopathological Study of 18 Cases of Inflammatory Myofibroblastic Tumors with Reference to ALK-1 Expression: 5-Year Experience in a Tertiary Care Center

Ramesh Babu Telugu
Anne Jennifer Prabhu
Nobin Babu Kalappurayil
John Mathai
Birla Roy Gnanamuthu
Marie Therese Manipadam

Departments of General Pathology, Paediatric Surgery, and Thoracic Surgery, Christian Medical College and Hospital, Vellore, India

Received: September 5, 2016
Revised: January 2, 2017
Accepted: January 12, 2017

Corresponding Author
Ramesh Babu Telugu, MD
Department of General Pathology, Christian Medical College and Hospital, Vellore, Tamilnadu 632004, India
Tel: +91-9566434081
Fax: +91-416-2232054
E-mail: dr.rameshtelugu@gmail.com

Background: Inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor is a histopathologically distinctive neoplasm of children and young adults. According to World Health Organization (WHO) classification, inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor is an intermediate-grade tumor, with potential for recurrence and rare metastasis. There are no definite histopathologic, molecular, or cytogenetic features to predict malignant transformation, recurrence, or metastasis.

Methods: A 5-year retrospective study of histopathologically diagnosed inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors of various anatomic sites was conducted to correlate anaplastic lymphoma kinase-1 (ALK-1) expression with histological atypia, multicentric origin of tumor, recurrence, and metastasis. Clinical details of all the cases were noted from the clinical work station. Immunohistochemical stains for ALK-1 and other antibodies were performed. Statistical analysis was done using Fisher exact test.

Results: A total of 18 cases of inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors were found during the study period, of which 14 were classical. The female-male ratio was 1:1 and the mean age was 23.8 years. Histologically atypical (four cases) and multifocal tumors (three cases, multicentric in origin) were noted. Recurrence was noted in 30% of ALK-1 positive and 37.5% of ALK-1 negative cases, whereas metastasis to the lung, liver, and pelvic bone was noted in the ALK-1 positive group only.

Conclusions: Overall, ALK-1 protein was expressed in 55.6% of inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors. There was no statistically significant correlation between ALK-1 expression, tumor type, recurrence and metastasis. However, ALK-1 immunohistochemistry is a useful diagnostic aid in the appropriate clinical and histomorphologic context.

Key Words: ALK protein; Atypia; Prognostic marker; Recurrence; Neoplasms

Inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor is a histopathologically distinctive neoplasm that has been described in various anatomic sites of children and young adults. It is composed of myofibroblastic spindle cells admixed with infiltrates of plasma cells, lymphocytes and eosinophils.1 Most common site is the lung followed by other sites. In 1954, Umiker and Iverson2 first described it in the lung. According to World Health Organization (WHO) classification, inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor is an intermediate tumor (rarely metastasizing), with potential for recurrence. These tumors were initially considered as reactive in nature, however, the neoplastic nature was revealed by molecular analysis that showed clonal rearrangement of the anaplastic lymphoma kinase (ALK) gene on the short arm of chromosome 2 at 2p23 with fusion of the 3' kinase region of the ALK gene with various partners including TPM3, TPM4, CLTC, and ran-binding protein 2 (RANBP2) in 50%–70% of inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors.3

A few cases of inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors undergo malignant transformation displaying large polygonal cells and higher mitotic rate including atypical mitosis.4 Marino-Enriquez et al.4 in 2011 first described the term epithelioid inflammatory myofibroblastic sarcoma because of the malignant nature of these tumours. Inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors expressing RANBP2 and ALK rearrangement (RANBP2-ALK) fusion usually display high grade epithelioid/round cell morphology with nuclear membrane staining pattern and predict poor prognosis.5

Expression of ALK fusion proteins in inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors can be detected by immunohistochemistry (IHC), the staining pattern of which is determined by the fusion partner: diffuse cytoplasmic staining when the partnering proteins are TPM3, TPM4, CARS, ATIC, and SEC31L122; granular cytoplasmic staining with CLTC; and nuclear membrane staining...
with RANBP2. However, the biological nature may be aggressive even when the histologic appearance is bland. There were no definite histopathologic, molecular, or cytogenetic features to predict the malignant transformation, recurrence, or metastasis. Surgical resection is the preferred treatment for inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), steroids, chemotherapy, and radiotherapy have been used as adjuvant therapy when feasible.

We undertook this retrospective study to correlate the histological atypia, multifocal appearance of tumor (multicentric in origin), recurrence, and metastasis with the immunohistochemical expression of ALK-1 in inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors, so as to objectively predict the biological behavior.

**MATERIALS AND METHODS**

This was a retrospective study of 18 patients with inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors, diagnosed in the Department of General Pathology during the period of January 2011–December 2015. The study was approved by the institutional review board (IRB No. 10200). The clinical details and follow-up information of each patient were noted from the clinical work station. All the archived slides were taken out and reviewed. Wherever necessary, blocks were cut and fresh slides prepared. All classical tumors fulfilled the morphologic criteria described in the *WHO Classification of Tumours of Soft Tissue and Bone*. Atypical cases were defined by increased cellularity, cellular atypia with large ganglion-like round to polygonal cells, multinucleated or anaplastic giant cells, atypical mitosis and necrosis. The archival tissues obtained from institutional and consultation files were fixed in 10% buffered neutral formalin and paraffin-embedded tissue blocks were prepared. Hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) stained sections were made. IHC was done on representative paraffin block(s) from each tumor.

**IHC procedure**

IHC slides and H&E slides prepared from formalin fixed, paraffin embedded tissue blocks were reviewed. Fresh sections were cut from archival blocks when necessary. IHCs had been done on Ventana Benchmark XT (Ventana Medical Systems, Tucson, AZ, USA). Details of primary antibodies used for IHC are shown in Table 1. Appropriate positive controls were used for each antibody throughout the study. The stain was considered to be positive if the tumor cells showed specific cytoplasmic and/or nuclear membrane staining for the particular antibody.

The immunohistochemical stains were evaluated semiquantitatively as follows: 0, negative; 1+, <10% of cells positive; 2+, 10%–50% of cells positive; and 3+, >50% of cells positive.

Intra-abdominal tumors with epithelioid morphology, nuclear or perinuclear accentuation of ALK immunopositivity and aggressive clinical behavior were categorized as epithelioid inflammatory myofibroblastic sarcoma.

**Statistical analysis**

The statistical analysis done in this study was Fisher exact test. p-value of <.05 was considered to be statistically significant.

**RESULTS**

A total of 18 cases of inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors were found during the study period. Of the 18 cases, 17 were institutional cases and one was a consultation case (case 2) from outside hospital. The clinicopathological features and outcome in the study group are depicted in Table 2. There were nine females and nine males with female to male ratio of 1:1 and the mean age was 23.8 years (range, 3 to 44 years). The most common locations were lung (six cases) and intra-abdominal region (six cases) followed by suprarenal, mastoid antrum, dorsum of nose, mediastinum, sphenoid wing, and breast (one case each). All the patients underwent surgical excision and a few patients had combination treatments: surgery plus chemotherapy or chemoradiotherapy. Limited follow-up information was available, ranging from 3 to 65 months (mean, 16.1 months). One patient

---

**Table 1. Immunohistochemical panel with primary antibodies and dilutions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antibody</th>
<th>Poly/Monoclonal</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Dilution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALK-1</td>
<td>Monoclonal</td>
<td>Leica</td>
<td>Prediluted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMA</td>
<td>1A4</td>
<td>Dako</td>
<td>Concentrated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSA</td>
<td>M7002</td>
<td>Dako</td>
<td>Concentrated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vimentin</td>
<td>V9</td>
<td>Dako</td>
<td>Concentrated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desmin</td>
<td>D33</td>
<td>Dako</td>
<td>Concentrated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMA</td>
<td>E29</td>
<td>Dako</td>
<td>Concentrated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CK</td>
<td>AE1/AE3</td>
<td>Dako</td>
<td>Concentrated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myogenin</td>
<td>F5D</td>
<td>Dako</td>
<td>Concentrated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD34</td>
<td>Q-bend 10</td>
<td>Dako</td>
<td>Concentrated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD21</td>
<td>1F8</td>
<td>Dako</td>
<td>Concentrated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD117</td>
<td>C-kit</td>
<td>Dako</td>
<td>Concentrated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-Caldesmon</td>
<td>H/CD</td>
<td>Dako</td>
<td>Concentrated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLE-1</td>
<td>M-101</td>
<td>Sigma</td>
<td>Concentrated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD30</td>
<td>Ber H2</td>
<td>Dako</td>
<td>Concentrated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD15</td>
<td>Carb-3</td>
<td>Dako</td>
<td>Concentrated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ALK-1, anaplastic lymphoma kinase-1; SMA, smooth muscle actin; MSA, muscle-specific actin; EMA, epithelial membrane antigen; CK, cytokeratin; TLE-1, transducin-like enhancer protein-1.
Inflammatory Myofibroblastic Tumors

had died of disease. Two cases were lost for follow-up. Remaining patients were alive with no evidence of disease at last follow-up.

Pathological findings

The tumor size ranged from 1 to 15 cm (mean, 5.6 cm). Grossly, the tumors were nodular circumscribed masses (Fig. 1) exhibiting soft to firm variegated appearance with grey white to tan fleshy and focal mucoid areas. One case showed variable hemorrhage and necrosis on the cut surface (case 1). Three cases (cases 13, 15, and 18) had multifocal appearance of tumor (multicentric in origin) in various anatomic locations (Table 2). Histologically, among the 18 inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors (including recurrent and metastatic cases), 14 cases had classic histologic features (Fig. 2) and four cases had atypical histologic features, revealing diffuse and focal cytoplasmic IHC expression of ALK-1 (Fig. 3).

Classification of histological patterns was done for all the cases according to the dominant tumor area, which included cellular (77.8%), myxoid (11.1%), and fibrous (11.1%) types. All the classical inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors displayed a bland spindle cell proliferation admixed with an inflammatory infiltrate composed of lymphocytes, plasma cells, and eosinophils. The atypical histologic features included increased cellularity, cellular atypia with large ganglion-like round to polygonal cells, multinucleated or anaplastic giant cells, atypical mitosis, and necrosis.

Among the atypical cases, one case (case 1) showed dominant epithelioid morphology with focally ganglion like cells, hypercellularity, atypia, mitosis, and prominent nucleoli (Fig. 4); one case (case 13) showed dominant spindle cell morphology and focal epithelioid morphology (Fig. 5); remaining two cases (cases 2 and 6) showed atypical spindle cell morphology (Fig. 6).

Among the atypical cases, three cases had recurrence (cases 1, 6, and 13) and two cases had metastasis to the lung, liver (case 1), and pelvic bone (case 15).

**Table 2.** Clinicopathological features and outcome in the study group

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case No.</th>
<th>Age (yr)</th>
<th>Sex</th>
<th>Anatomic site</th>
<th>Size (cm)</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>Recurrence (mo)</th>
<th>Metastases</th>
<th>Follow-up status (mo)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Suprarenal</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>SE + CT</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Liver and Lung</td>
<td>8 (DOD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Colon</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>4 (ANED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Mastoid antrum</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>38 (ANED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>SE + CT</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>11 (ANED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>6 (ANED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Colon</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>3 (ANED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Sphenoid wing</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>SE + CT + RT</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>51 (ANED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Bronchus</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>65 (ANED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>16 (ANED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Omentum</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>14 (ANED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>8 (ANED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Jejunum, ileocaecum, mesentry, and omentum</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>SE + RT</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>9 (ANED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Dorsum of nose</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>8 (ANED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Pelvic mass, omentum, and bladder</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>SE + CT</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Pelvic bone</td>
<td>7 (ANED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Mediastinum</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>7 (ANED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Distal CBD, cystic duct, and periportal lymph nodes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>3 (ANED)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F, female; SE, surgical excision; CT, chemotherapy; DOD, died of disease; M, male; NA, not available; ANED, alive with no evidence of disease; RT, radiotherapy; CBD, common bile duct.
Fig. 2. (A, B) Classical inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor with bland spindle cell proliferation and pronounced inflammatory infiltrate.

Fig. 3. Diffuse (A) and focal (B) cytoplasmic immunohistochemical stains of anaplastic lymphoma kinase-1.

Fig. 4. Epithelioid inflammatory myofibroblastic sarcoma with increased cellularity, cellular atypia with large epithelioid like cells, multinucleated or anaplastic giant cells and atypical mitosis (A); perinuclear accentuation of anaplastic lymphoma kinase-1 expression (B).
Immunohistochemical findings

Spindled tumor cells of inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors showed cytoplasmic or membrane positivity for smooth muscle actin (12/16 cases), muscle-specific actin (3/6 cases), vimentin (8/8 cases), desmin (5/11 cases), and epithelial membrane antigen (2/4 cases). The spindled tumor cells were negative for cytokeratin, myogenin, CD34, CD21, CD117, h-caldesmon, TLE-1, CD30, and CD15 (Table 3).

Immunohistochemical stain for ALK-1 expression was available in all the 18 cases, demonstrating cytoplasmic reactivity of spindled or polygonal tumor cells for ALK-1 in 10 cases (55.6%) and no reactivity in eight cases (44.4%) (Tables 3, 4). Diffuse (3+) cytoplasmic staining was observed in six cases and focal (2+) cytoplasmic staining in three cases.

An intra-abdominal inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor with dominant epithelioid morphology (case 1) revealed perinuclear accentuation of ALK-1 immunoreactivity, suggestive of epithelioid inflammatory myofibroblastic sarcoma (Fig. 4); the remaining atypical cases with spindle cell morphology (including case 13 with focal epithelioid morphology) were negative for ALK-1, suggestive of atypical inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors only (Figs. 5, 6).

ALK-1 positive tumors (55.6%) included five females and five males and the mean age was 23.8 years (range, 3 to 44 years), compared with the mean age of (four females and four males) 27.1 years (range, 18 to 41 years) for ALK-1 negative cases.
Recurrence was noted in 3/10 ALK-1 positive (30%) and 3/8 ALK-1 negative (37.5%) cases, whereas metastasis to the lung, liver and pelvic bone was noted in the ALK-1 positive group (Tables 4, 5).

Statistical analysis

ALK-1 immunopositivity in neither of the classical (p = .275), atypical (p = .275) nor multifocal tumor (p > .99) types was statistically significant at 5% level of significance with Fisher exact test. There was no statistically significant correlation between ALK-1 expression and either of the recurrence (p > .99) or metastasis (p = .485) of inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors.

DISCUSSION

Inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors formerly described as inflammatory pseudotumor, with an unpredictable behavior ranging from benign to low-grade malignant, are classified as intermediate grade tumors, with potential for recurrence and rare metastasis, in the current WHO Classification of Tumours of Soft tissue and Bone.3 These tumors are described in children and young adults in various anatomic sites with a tendency towards local recurrence in about 25% of abdominopelvic lesions and rare metastasis (< 5%).3,7 A few cases of inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors may appear morphologically benign but the biological nature may be aggressive even when the histologic appearance is bland. There were no definite predictors of the histologic transformation, recurrence, or metastasis. These tumors were considered as a neoplasm after the discovery of clonal rearrangement of the ALK gene on the short arm of chromosome 2 at 2p23 in 50%–75% of extrapulmonary inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors.7

In a study by Wang et al.,9 the most common site of inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors was abdominopelvic region (73.9%) followed by other locations. The present study included

Table 3. Immunohistochemical stains performed in the study group

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Marker (No. of tests)</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALK-1 (n = 18)</td>
<td>10 (55.6)</td>
<td>8 (44.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMA (n = 16)</td>
<td>12 (75.0)</td>
<td>4 (25.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSA (n = 6)</td>
<td>3 (50.0)</td>
<td>3 (50.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vimentin (n = 8)</td>
<td>8 (100)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desmin (n = 11)</td>
<td>5 (45.5)</td>
<td>6 (54.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMA (n = 4)</td>
<td>2 (50.0)</td>
<td>2 (50.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CK (n = 6)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6 (100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myogenin (n = 3)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3 (100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD34 (n = 7)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>7 (100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD21 (n = 3)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3 (100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD117 (n = 2)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2 (100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H Caldesmon (n = 4)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4 (100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLE-1 (n = 4)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4 (100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD30 (n = 3)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3 (100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD15 (n = 2)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2 (100)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Values are presented as number (%).

ALK-1, anaplastic lymphoma kinase-1; SMA, smooth muscle actin, MSA, muscle-specific actin; EMA, epithelial membrane antigen; CK, cytokeratin; TLE-1, transducin-like enhancer protein-1.

Table 4. Histological types with atypia, ALK-1 expression, recurrence, and metastasis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case No.</th>
<th>Sex</th>
<th>Histological pattern</th>
<th>Atypia</th>
<th>ALK-1 expression</th>
<th>Recurrence (mo)</th>
<th>Metastases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Liver and lung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>2+</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Fi</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>My</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>2+</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>My</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>2+</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Fi</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Pelvic bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>2+</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ALK-1, anaplastic lymphoma kinase-1; F, female; C, cellular histological pattern; NA, not available; M, male; Fi, fibrous histological pattern; My, myxoid histological pattern; 0, negative; 1+, <10% positive cells; 2+, 10-50% positive cells; 3+, >50% of cells positive.
myofibroblastic tumors were ALK-1 positive in the present study. There was no statistically significant correlation between ALK-1 expression, atypia, recurrence and metastasis in the present study compared to the other studies, probably due to a small sample size and limited follow up data; a larger study may be taken up in the future to evaluate the statistical significance.

Marino-Enriquez et al. proposed a term epithelioid inflammatory myofibroblastic sarcoma for epithelioid variant of intra-abdominal inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors with a nuclear membrane or perinuclear pattern of ALK expression and aggressive clinical behavior. In the present study, one patient with an intra-abdominal mass, which was categorized as inflammatory myofibroblastic sarcoma, with epithelioid morphology and perinuclear accentuation of ALK-1 expression, developed liver and lung metastasis and expired within 8 months. ALK gene rearrangement was demonstrated in all the tested cases of epithelioid variant of inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors by fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH). Janik et al. studied pulmonary and extrapolmonary pseudotumors with overall recurrence rate of 14%. Multifocality of pulmonary and extrapolmonary pseudotumors had a high chance of recurrence compared with tumors confined to a single organ. Intraabdominal pseudotumors were associated with > 75% of the recurrences when compared to other extrapolmonary pseudotumors. In the present study, extrapolmonary multifocal inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors were associated with recurrence and metastasis. Study by Chaudhary pointed out that ALK gene rearrangements were often seen in inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors of children and young adults compared to adults over 40 years of age. The search for ALK gene rearrangement by FISH is a useful tool for the diagnosis of inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors.

Ramotar et al. reported a case of inflammatory pseudotumor of the head and neck mimicking a metastatic disease in a human immunodeficiency virus–positive 49-year-old female. In immunocompromised patients, the likelihood of inflammatory pseudotumor should also be considered in the differential diagnosis. ALK protein immunoreexpression was detected in various other tumors including lipomatous tumors, rhabdomyosarcomas, Ewing’s sarcoma/primitive neuroectodermal tumors, malignant fibrous histiocytomas, and leiomyosarcomas. Except inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors, almost all other tumors displayed low level of ALK expression.

The differential diagnosis of these tumors includes both benign and malignant spindle or epithelioid cell tumors. The spindle cell tumors include fibroblastic/myofibroblastic tumors, fibrous histiocytoma, and solitary fibrous tumor. The tumors with epithelioid or round cell morphology include anaplastic large cell

### Table 5. Correlation of ALK-1 positive and ALK-1 negative inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>ALK-1 positive (n=10)</th>
<th>ALK-1 negative (n=8)</th>
<th>p-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Male:Female</td>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age (yr)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range</td>
<td>3–44</td>
<td>18–41</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean</td>
<td>23.8</td>
<td>27.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor type</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classical</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>.275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atypical</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>.275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifocal (multicentric in origin)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>&gt; .99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biological behavior</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recurrence</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>&gt; .99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metastasis</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>.485</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ALK-1, anaplastic lymphoma kinase-1.

33.3% each of intrapulmonary and intra-abdominal locations followed by other locations. There was slight male predominance in the literature, however, there was an equal incidence in each gender in the present study.

Hussong et al. in 1999 stated that the combination of cellular atypia, presence of ganglion-like cells, p53 expression and DNA aneuploidy are all possible predictors to identify the malignant change and aggressive behavior of inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors. In a study by Coffin et al., 27.1% were classical and 72.9% were atypical inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors. The atypical features in his study were increased cellularity, cellular and nuclear pleomorphism, distinct fascicular and focal herringbone pattern, cellular atypia with large ganglion-like round to polygonal cells, multinucleated or anaplastic giant cells, atypical mitosis, and necrosis. ALK immunopositivity was noted in 78% atypical, 54% recurrent and 60% classical inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors. Metastatic inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors (10.1%) were negative for ALK expression.

In another study, there were 60% classical and 40% atypical inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors. Twenty-six point seven percent cases showed ALK expression. Twenty-five percent of ALK-positive and 63.6% of ALK-negative inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors revealed recurrence. Metastasis was restricted to the ALK-negative group. Statistically significant correlation was found between atypia, recurrence and metastasis. There was a significant correlation between ALK expression and recurrence. The present study revealed 77.8% classical and 22.2% atypical inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors. Overall ALK-1 immunopositivity was noted in 55.6% and negativity in 44.4% of inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors. Metastatic inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors were ALK-1 positive in the present study.
lymphoma, epithelioid leiomyosarcoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, undifferentiated sarcoma, myxoid/round cell liposarcoma, myxofibrosarcoma, dedifferentiated liposarcoma, poorly differentiated carcinoma, malignant melanoma, and epithelioid gastrointestinal stromal tumor.\textsuperscript{5,6}

Anaplastic large cell lymphoma can be differentiated from epithelioid variant of inflammatory myofibroblastic sarcoma by immunoreactivity for CD30, CD3, and CD45, diffuse membranous or cytoplasmic staining of ALK-1 and absence of RANBP2-ALK rearrangement. High-grade leiomyosarcoma usually reveals fascicles of spindle and epithelioid cells with increased cellularity, cellular atypia, pleomorphism, cigar-shaped nuclei and abundant brightly eosinophilic cytoplasm. The tumor cells are positive for h-caldesmon and negative for ALK staining. Alveolar rhabdomyosarcoma shows uniform round cells with scant cytoplasm and usually lacks myxoid background and inflammatory infiltrates. Immunohistochemical stain for myogenin reveals nuclear positivity. Dedifferentiated liposarcoma can have features of inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor, but with expression of MDM2 and absence of ALK-1. Epithelioid malignant peripheral nerve sheath tumor will be strongly and diffusely positive for S100 and negative for ALK-1 and also SMARCB1. Malignant melanoma shows polygonal cells with prominent nucleoli and abundant brightly eosinophilic cytoplasm. The tumor cells are positive for h-caldesmon and negative for ALK staining.

Surgical resection is the preferred treatment for inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors. NSAIDs, steroids, chemotherapy, and radiotherapy have been used as adjuvant therapy when feasible.\textsuperscript{6}

In a study by Jacob et al.,\textsuperscript{18} systemic (liver and lumbar spine) involvement of inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor in a 45-year-old female, expressing ALK gene rearrangement, responded very well to ALK inhibitor (Crizotinib). In a series of cases by Butrynski et al.,\textsuperscript{19} multifocal intra-abdominal inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors which expressed ALK gene rearrangement, were treated successfully by ALK inhibitor (Crizotinib). Fragosos et al.\textsuperscript{11} in 2011 stated that, although surgical resection is the preferred treatment for inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors, cases which are not amenable to surgical excision may be treated conservatively.

In conclusion, this study demonstrates that inflammatory myofibroblastic sarcoma with perinuclear accentuation of ALK-1 showed aggressive clinical course with metastasis and mortality. Few cases which were benign in histology also exhibited recurrence irrespective of ALK-1 expression. Metastasis was seen in ALK-1 positive tumors. However, there was no statistically significant correlation between ALK-1 expression, tumor type, recurrence, and metastasis. Overall, ALK-1 IHC is a useful diagnostic aid in the appropriate histomorphologic context, especially in identifying epithelioid inflammatory myofibroblastic sarcomas. There were no definite histopathologic criteria to predict malignant transformation, recurrence, or metastasis. However, this study is limited by the very small number of cases, limited follow-up data and also the lack of identification of ALK gene rearrangement by FISH. A search for newer molecular tools by larger studies needs to be performed to identify prognostic features to guide treatment and predict the outcome.

Conflicts of Interest

No potential conflict of interest relevant to this article was reported.

Acknowledgments

The authors thank the staff Mrs. Annie Rebecca and Mr. S. Daniel Dilip in the Immunohistochemical laboratory in the Department of Pathology at Christian Medical College, Vellore for their technical help and Mr. Prakash Ramasami, senior demonstrator, biostatistics, CMC, Vellore for the statistical analysis performed.

REFERENCES

5. Li J, Yin WH, Takeuchi K, Guan H, Huang YH, Chan JK. Inflam-
Inflammatory Myofibroblastic Tumors

Inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor with RANBP2 and ALK gene rearrangement: a report of two cases and literature review. Diagn Pathol 2013; 8: 147.


Characteristic Changes in Decidual Gene Expression Signature in Spontaneous Term Parturition

Haidy El-Azzamy¹,², *, Andrea Balogh¹,³,⁴, Yi Xu¹, Christopher LaJeunesse’, Olesya Plazyo¹
Zhonghui Xu¹, Theodore G. Price¹
Zongdong Dong¹, Adi L. Tarca²,⁶
Zoltan Papp¹, Sonia S. Hassan¹,⁶
Tinnakorn Chaiworapongsa³,⁶
Chong Jai Kim¹,⁶
Nadthy Gomez-Lopez¹,⁶
Nandor Gabor Than¹,⁶,⁷,¹⁰,¹¹

¹Perinatology Research Branch, NICHD/NIH/DHHS, Bethesda, MD, and Detroit, MI, USA; ²Department of Immunology, Eotvos Lorand University, Budapest, Hungary; ³Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, MI; ⁴Department of Epidemiology and Biostatistics, Michigan State University, East Lansing, MI; ⁵Center for Molecular Medicine and Genetics, Wayne State University, Detroit, MI; ⁶Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Wayne State University, School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA; ⁷Maternity Private Department, Károlyi Clinical Block, Semmelweis University, Budapest, Hungary; ⁸Department of Pathology, Wayne State University, School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA; ⁹Department of Pathology, Asan Medical Center, University of Ulsan College of Medicine, Seoul, Korea; ¹⁰Systems Biology of Reproduction Lund resultList Group, Institute of Enzymology, Research Centre for Natural Sciences, Hungarian Academy of Sciences, Budapest; ¹¹First Department of Pathology and Experimental Cancer Research, Semmelweis University, Budapest, Hungary

Received: October 2, 2016
Revised: December 3, 2016
Accepted: December 20, 2016

Corresponding Author
Nandor Gabor Than, MD, PhD
Systems Biology of Reproduction Lund resultList Group, Institute of Enzymology, Research Centre for Natural Sciences, Hungarian Academy of Sciences, 2 Magyar Tudokorkutja, H-1117 Budapest, Hungary
Tel: +36-1-382-6788
E-mail: than.gabor@kt.mta.hu

Roberto Romero, MD, DMedSci
Perinatology Research Branch, NICHD/NIH/DHHS, Hutzel Women’s Hospital, 3990, John R Street, 4 Brush, Detroit, MI 48201, USA
Tel: +1-313-993-2700
Fax: +1-313-993-2694
E-mail: prbchiefstaff@med.wayne.edu

*Haidy El-Azzamy and Andrea Balogh contributed equally to this work.

Background: The decidua has been implicated in the “terminal pathway” of human term parturition, which is characterized by the activation of pro-inflammatory pathways in gestational tissues. However, the transcriptomic changes in the decidua leading to terminal pathway activation have not been systematically explored. This study aimed to compare the decidual expression of developmental signaling and inflammation-related genes before and after spontaneous term labor in order to reveal their involvement in this process. Methods: Chorioamniotic membranes were obtained from normal pregnant women who delivered at term with spontaneous labor (TIL, n=14) or without labor (TNL, n=15). Decidual cells were isolated from snap-frozen chorioamniotic membranes with laser microdissection. The expression of 46 genes involved in decidual development, sex steroid and prostaglandin signaling, as well as pro- and anti-inflammatory pathways, was analyzed using high-throughput quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction (qRT-PCR). Chorioamniotic membrane sections were immunostained and then semi-quantified for five proteins, and immunoassays for three chemokines were performed on maternal plasma samples. Results: The genes with the highest expression in the decidua at term gestation included insulin-like growth factor-binding protein 1 (IGFBP1), galectin-1 (LGALS1), and progestogen-associated endometrial protein (PAEP); the expression of estrogen receptor 1 (ESR1), homeobox A11 (HOXA11), interleukin 1β (IL1B), IL8, progestrogen receptor membrane component 2 (PGRMC2), and prostaglandin E synthase (PTGES) was higher in TIL than in TNL cases; the expression of chemokine C-C motif ligand 2 (CCL2), CCL5, LGALS1, LGALS3, and PAEP was lower in TIL than in TNL cases; immunostaining confirmed qRT-PCR data for IL-8, CCL2, galectin-1, galectin-3, and PAEP; and no correlations between the decidual gene expression and the maternal plasma protein concentrations of CCL2, CCL5, and IL-8 were found. Conclusions: Our data suggests that with the initiation of parturition, the decidual expression of anti-inflammatory mediators decreases, while the expression of pro-inflammatory mediators and steroid receptors increases. This shift may affect downstream signaling pathways that can lead to parturition.

Key Words: Chemokines; Cytokines; Estrogens; Galectins; Leukocytes; Progesterone
Parturition is a complex process tightly regulated by the cooperation of the neuroendocrine and immune systems. Among the numerous hormonal factors implicated in the regulation of uterine quiescence and parturition (e.g., corticotropin-releasing hormone, cortisol, oxytocin), the changes in bioavailability of estrogen and progesterone seem to be key in parturition. While estrogen promotes labor by stimulating biochemical and physiological changes in myometrial cells that augment uterine contractility and excitability, the actions of progesterone support pregnancy maintenance and prevent parturition by promoting myometrial quiescence. In humans, the changes in the relative expression of various progesterone receptors (elevation in the progesterone receptor A [PR-A]/PR-B ratio) in uterine tissues and fetal membranes are responsible for decreasing progesterone actions (functional progesterone withdrawal). A strong positive association between the PR-A/PR-B ratio and estrogen receptor α (ERα) expression in the myometrium of term pregnant women has been demonstrated, suggesting that functional progesterone withdrawal generates “functional estrogen activation.” All of these changes can then lead to the stimulation of pro-inflammatory pathways in the cervix, decidua, and fetal membranes.

The pro-inflammatory microenvironment in various gestational tissues, generated by the influx and local activation of maternal leukocytes and the increased production of soluble immune mediators, is essential for the onset of labor. The selective influx of leukocytes into gestational tissues and various layers of the fetal membranes is driven by chemokines, a subset of cytokines with chemotactic properties. The infiltrating monocytes and differentiated macrophages, neutrophils, and T cells as well as decidual stromal cells are rich sources of pro-inflammatory cytokines, including interleukin 1 (IL-1), IL-6, and tumor necrosis factor α (TNFα). These cytokines have been shown to regulate inflammatory processes leading to labor by promoting myometrial contractility, cervical ripening, and membrane rupture. For example, pro-inflammatory cytokines induce the expression of prostaglandin-endoperoxide synthase 2 (PTGS2) in the chorioamniotic membranes and decidua, leading to the increase in local and amniotic fluid concentrations of prostaglandins that contribute to the transition from myometrial quiescence to labor initiation. These data suggest that cytokines and chemokines orchestrate the activation of decidual tissue during labor.

To promote labor-associated inflammation, the actions of anti-inflammatory mechanisms, at least in part, need to be attenuated in gestational tissues. Among anti-inflammatory molecules, soluble tumor necrosis factor receptors (TNF-R), IL-1 receptor antagonist (IL-1RA), IL-4, and IL-10 have been previously examined in the amniotic fluid in relation to labor. The concentrations of soluble TNF-R1 and TNF-R2 were lower in the amniotic fluid of women in spontaneous labor at term than in women who were not in labor at term, while there was no difference in amniotic fluid IL-1RA concentrations regardless of the labor status, either at term or preterm. Data on amniotic fluid IL-10 and IL-4 concentrations were inconsistent, since IL-10 or IL-4 concentrations were not different or even higher in term or preterm labor than in gestational age-matched groups of non-laboring women. The expression of these anti-inflammatory molecules in decidual cells during term parturition has not been widely investigated. In this context, it is of importance that some other anti-inflammatory mediators (e.g., cytokines, galectins, and progestogen-associated endometrial protein [PAEP]) have their strongest expression in the decidua within the uterus and may be involved in the regulation of local inflammatory pathways.

The decidua is localized between the chorionic villi and the myometrium and, thus, may play a key role in the cross-talk between the maternal and fetal compartments and in the regulation of labor. Maternal leukocyte populations in the decidua and their interaction with fetal trophoblasts as well as the network of soluble factors produced by the decidua involved in the regulation of implantation are increasingly characterized. However, the complex and multifaceted roles of the decidua in the mechanisms leading to the onset of labor have been relatively understudied. In spite of that, the activation of the decidual layer of the chorionic membranes is one of the earliest events in spontaneous term parturition. This is supported by a recent concept stating that there is a “decidual clock,” of the multiple gestational clocks that regulates the timing of birth. This suggests that advancing gestational age is associated with the withdrawal of active suppression and/or an enhanced sensitivity of the decidua to signals capable of inducing inflammation, which then promotes the release of a variety of biologically active inflammatory mediators, such as prostaglandins, cytokines, and chemokines, leading to the onset of labor.

In relation to the “decidual clock” concept, it is tempting to hypothesize that the entire decidual developmental program may also play a role in the regulation of the local micro-environmental balance, controlling the maintenance of pregnancy and then the activation of labor. This developmental program may involve the key action of homeobox (HOX) gene expression in the uterus. So far, it has been demonstrated that steroids regulate the expression of HOX genes in a tissue-specific manner, and the changing
steroid responsiveness of the decidua during the perilabor period may also influence their expression. Although several publications outline the importance of HOX genes in uterine development, the menstrual cycle, and implantation, 68-73 their involvement in the labor process is poorly understood.

Taken together, these data show that the importance of uncovering molecular events in the decidua seems pivotal to our better understanding of the regulation of term labor. To date, most of the studies that focus on gene, protein, hormonal, or other molecular changes in relation to labor utilize whole chorioamniotic membranes but fail to pinpoint the involvement of the decidua in these changes. Therefore, the aim of this study was to compare decidual gene expression patterns in normal term delivery with or without labor. Based on the current state of knowledge about the cellular pathways involved in the activation of the decidua during labor, genes in the following categories were of interest to our study: (1) estrogen, progesterone, and prostaglandin signaling; (2) cytokines, chemokines, and chemokine receptors; (3) anti-inflammatory molecules with predominant decidual expression; (4) transcription factors involved in decidual development and immune cell differentiation; and (5) additional genes with predominant decidual expression.

**MATERIALS AND METHODS**

**Ethics statement**

Chorioamniotic membrane samples and maternal plasma specimens were retrieved from the Bank of Biological Specimens at Wayne State University, the Detroit Medical Center, and the Perinatology Research Branch of the Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development, National Institutes of Health, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (NICHD/NIH/DHHS). Approval from the Institutional Review Boards of NICHD and Wayne State University for the collection and utilization of biological materials as well as written informed consent from all human subjects was obtained prior to the collection of samples.

**Human subjects, clinical specimens, and definitions**

Women were included in the following gestational age-matched groups: (1) spontaneous term labor and delivery (TIL) \(n = 14\); and (2) elective Cesarean section at term without labor (TNL) \(n = 15\). There were no significant differences among the study groups regarding demographic and clinical characteristics (Table 1). Patients with multiple pregnancies or neonates having congenital or chromosomal abnormalities were excluded. No women had any medical or obstetrical complications or clinical or histological signs of chorioamnionitis, and they delivered neonates of appropriate birth weight for their gestational age, according to the national birth weight distribution curve. 74 Labor was defined by the presence of regular uterine contractions at a frequency of at least two contractions every 10 minutes and cervical changes that resulted in delivery. 74

**Placental histopathological examinations**

Five-micrometer-thick sections of formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded chorioamniotic membrane specimens \(n = 29\) were cut and mounted on Superfrost slides (Erie Scientific LLC, Portsmouth, NH, USA). After deparaffinization, the slides were rehydrated and stained with hematoxylin and eosin. Two pathologists, who were blinded to the clinical outcome, evaluated the slides according to published criteria. 75,76

**Sample preparation**

Fifteen-micrometer-thick sections of snap-frozen chorioamniotic membranes were embedded in Tissue-Tek O.C.T. Compound (Tissue-Tek 4538, Sakura Finetek USA, Inc., Torrance, CA, USA), sectioned with a Leica CM3050S Cryostat (Leica Micro-

**Table 1.** Demographic and clinical characteristics of the study groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Spontaneous term labor ((n = 14))</th>
<th>Term no labor ((n = 15))</th>
<th>p-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maternal age (yr)</td>
<td>25 ((20–29))</td>
<td>27 ((23–34))</td>
<td>.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Race</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>African American</td>
<td>12 ((85.7))</td>
<td>11 ((73.3))</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caucasian</td>
<td>1 ((7.1))</td>
<td>3 ((20.0))</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>1 ((7.1))</td>
<td>1 ((8.7))</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maternal weight (kg)</td>
<td>64 ((62–85))</td>
<td>75 ((68–82))</td>
<td>.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body mass index (kg/m²)</td>
<td>26.7 ((24.6–32.9))</td>
<td>28.3 ((27.4–30.9))</td>
<td>.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gravidity</td>
<td>3 ((2.5–5))</td>
<td>3 ((2–4))</td>
<td>.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gestational age at delivery (wk)</td>
<td>39.1 ((38.7–39.3))</td>
<td>39.0 ((38.9–39.1))</td>
<td>.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birth weight (g)</td>
<td>3,230 ((3,083–3,602))</td>
<td>3,490 ((3,185–3,560))</td>
<td>.66</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Values are presented as median (interquartile range) or number (%).
systems, Wetzlar, Germany), and then mounted on polyethylene membrane glass slides (Leica) and stored at −80°C until use. All further steps were carried out at room temperature. Slides were quickly treated with graded ethanol solutions (Val Tech Diagnostics, Inc., Pittsburgh, PA, USA), and then cleared by immersion in xylene (Dynamic Diagnostics Inc., Livonia, MI, USA). All steps were carried out under RNase-free conditions.

Laser microdissection

Decidual cell populations were collected from snap-frozen chorioamniotic membranes (n = 29, ~18 mm²/slide) using laser microdissection with an LMD 6000 laser microdissection microscope (Leica Microsystems). To compare decidual and non-decidual gene expression, chorioamniotic cell populations were also collected for three cases. Dissections were completed within 60–90 minutes after the slides were thawed to ensure minimal RNA degradation. Cell populations were cut and collected in extraction buffer (Arcturus Picopure RNA Isolation Kit, Applied Biosystems, Life Technologies Corporation, Foster City, CA, USA), and then incubated at 42°C for 30 minutes. Cell extracts were vortexed, centrifuged at 800 × g, and stored at −80°C until use.

Total RNA isolation

Total RNA was isolated from laser-microdissected and digested samples using the Arcturus Picopure RNA Isolation Kit (Applied Biosystems), according to the manufacturer’s protocol. The Ambion DNA-free Kit (Life Technologies) was used to remove genomic DNA. Total RNA concentrations were measured using the NanoDrop ND-1000 Spectrophotometer (Thermo Scientific, Wilmington, DE, USA). The Bioanalyzer 2100 (Agilent Technologies, Santa Clara, CA, USA) was used to determine RNA integrity and quality. RNA samples were then stored at −80°C until use.

Complementary DNA preparation and quantitative real-time PCR

The SuperScript III First-Strand Kit (Life Technologies) was used to generate cDNA. TaqMan gene expression assays (Applied Biosystems) (Table 2), the Biomark System (Fluidigm, San Francisco, CA, USA), and Fluidigm’s 96.96 Dynamic Array Chip (Fluidigm) were used to perform the qRT-PCR assays. The 96.96 Array Chip was primed in an Integrated Fluidic Circuit Controller with control fluid. The TaqMan gene expression assays were mixed with 2 × assay loading reagent (Fluidigm) and loaded into the assay inlet on the chip after priming. The sample inlet was filled with a mixture of preamplified cDNA, TaqMan Universal PCR Master Mix (Applied Biosystems), and 20 × sample loading reagent (Fluidigm), and then the chip was loaded into the BioMark System. The cycle threshold (Ct) value of each reaction was obtained with the Fluidigm qRT-PCR analysis software.

Immunohistochemistry

Five-micrometer-thick sections of formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded chorionic membranes were cut and placed on salinized TruBond 380 adhesive microscope slides (Tru Scientific, Bellingham, WA, USA). Immunostainings were performed using the Leica Bond-Max (Leica Microsystems) and the Ventana Discovery (Ventana Medical Systems, Inc., Tucson, AZ, USA) autostainer systems, as detailed in Supplementary Table S1. The Bond Polymer Refine Detection Kit (Leica Microsystems) and DAB-MAP HRP Kit (Ventana Medical Systems) were used to detect the chromogenic reaction of horseradish peroxidase. Negative control immunostainings were performed by omitting primary antibodies and using either rabbit IgG or mouse IgG isotype control antibodies (Supplementary Fig. S1).

Semi-quantitative immunoscoring

Semi-quantitative immunoscoring was carried out by scoring five random fields in each tissue section with an immunoreactive score modified from a previous publication. The two examiners were blinded to the clinical information. Immunostaining intensity was graded as follows: 0, negative; 1, weak; 2, intermediate; and 3, strong.

Immunoaassays

Maternal plasma concentrations of CCL2 (chemokine C-C motif ligand-2), CCL5, and IL-8 were determined by sensitive and specific immunoassays (Meso Scale Discovery, Rockville, MD, USA), according to the manufacturer’s protocol. Briefly, 1% (w/v) Blocker B Solution was dispensed into each well of the pre-coated plates and incubated with vigorous shaking for 1 hour at room temperature. Plates were then washed three times with phosphate buffered saline (PBS) and 0.05% Tween 20 (Sigma-Aldrich Corporation, St. Louis, MO, USA). Subsequently, samples
or calibrators were dispensed into separate wells and incubated for 2 hours with vigorous shaking at room temperature. Plates were then washed three times with PBS and 0.05% Tween-20, followed by the addition of the 1× Detection Antibody Solution (Meso Scale Discovery) into each well and incubation for 2 hours with vigorous shaking at room temperature. The plates were

Table 2. TaqMan assays used for qRT-PCR expression profiling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Gene symbol</th>
<th>Gene name</th>
<th>Assay ID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chemokines</td>
<td>CCL1</td>
<td>Chemokine (C-C motif) ligand 1</td>
<td>Hs00171072_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCL2</td>
<td>Chemokine (C-C motif) ligand 2</td>
<td>Hs00234140_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCL5</td>
<td>Chemokine (C-C motif) ligand 5</td>
<td>Hs00174575_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCL7</td>
<td>Chemokine (C-C motif) ligand 7</td>
<td>Hs00171147_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCL15</td>
<td>Chemokine (C-C motif) ligand 15</td>
<td>Hs00361122_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CXCL1</td>
<td>Chemokine (C-X-C motif) ligand 1</td>
<td>Hs00269937_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CXCL5</td>
<td>Chemokine (C-X-C motif) ligand 5</td>
<td>Hs00171085_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CXCL10</td>
<td>Chemokine (C-X-C motif) ligand 10</td>
<td>Hs00171042_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CXCL12</td>
<td>Chemokine (C-X-C motif) ligand 12</td>
<td>Hs00171022_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IL8</td>
<td>Interleukin-8/Chemokine (C-X-C motif) ligand 8</td>
<td>Hs00174103_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemokine receptors</td>
<td>CCR1</td>
<td>Chemokine (C-C motif) receptor 1</td>
<td>Hs00174298_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCR2</td>
<td>Chemokine (C-C motif) receptor 2</td>
<td>Hs00356601_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCR5</td>
<td>Chemokine (C-C motif) receptor 5</td>
<td>Hs00152917_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCR8</td>
<td>Chemokine (C-C motif) receptor 8</td>
<td>Hs00174764_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCRX1</td>
<td>Chemokine (C-C motif) receptor 1</td>
<td>Hs01921207_s1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCRX2</td>
<td>Chemokine (C-C motif) receptor 2</td>
<td>Hs01011557_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCRX3</td>
<td>Chemokine (C-C motif) receptor 3</td>
<td>Hs00171041_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCRX4</td>
<td>Chemokine (C-C motif) receptor 4</td>
<td>Hs00976734_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytokines</td>
<td>IL1A</td>
<td>Interleukin 1, alpha</td>
<td>Hs00999028_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IL1B</td>
<td>Interleukin 1, beta</td>
<td>Hs00174097_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IL4</td>
<td>Interleukin 4</td>
<td>Hs00174122_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IL10</td>
<td>Interleukin 10</td>
<td>Hs00174086_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IL17A</td>
<td>Interleukin 17A</td>
<td>Hs00174383_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IFNG</td>
<td>Interferon, gamma</td>
<td>Hs00999041_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TNF</td>
<td>Tumor necrosis factor alpha</td>
<td>Hs00174128_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galectins</td>
<td>LGALS1</td>
<td>Lectin, galactoside-binding, soluble, 1</td>
<td>Hs00169327_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LGALS3</td>
<td>Lectin, galactoside-binding, soluble, 3</td>
<td>Hs00173587_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LGALS8</td>
<td>Lectin, galactoside-binding, soluble, 8</td>
<td>Hs00374634_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LGALS9A</td>
<td>Lectin, galactoside-binding, soluble, 9</td>
<td>Hs00371321_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endometrial proteins</td>
<td>IGFBP1</td>
<td>Insulin-like growth factor-binding protein 1</td>
<td>Hs00238877_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PAEP</td>
<td>Progestagen-associated endometrial protein</td>
<td>Hs01046125_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOX transcription factors</td>
<td>HOXA9</td>
<td>Homeobox A9</td>
<td>Hs00268821_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HOXA10</td>
<td>Homeobox A10</td>
<td>Hs00172012_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HOXA11</td>
<td>Homeobox A11</td>
<td>Hs00194149_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostaglandin signaling molecules</td>
<td>PTGER2</td>
<td>Prostaglandin E receptor 2</td>
<td>Hs00168754_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PTGES</td>
<td>Prostaglandin E synthase</td>
<td>Hs00610420_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PTGS2</td>
<td>Prostaglandin-endoperoxide synthase 2</td>
<td>Hs01573471_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sex steroid receptors</td>
<td>ESR1</td>
<td>Estrogen receptor 1</td>
<td>Hs00174860_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ESR2</td>
<td>Estrogen receptor 2 (beta)</td>
<td>Hs01100356_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PGRMC1</td>
<td>Progesterone receptor membrane component 1</td>
<td>Hs00198499_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PGRMC2</td>
<td>Progesterone receptor membrane component 2</td>
<td>Hs01128672_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PGR</td>
<td>Progesterone receptor</td>
<td>Hs001556702_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-cell transcription factors</td>
<td>FOXP3</td>
<td>Forkhead box P3</td>
<td>Hs00858355_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GATA3</td>
<td>GATA binding protein 3</td>
<td>Hs00231122_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RORC</td>
<td>RAR-related orphan receptor gamma</td>
<td>Hs00176122_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TBX21</td>
<td>T-box 21</td>
<td>Hs00203436_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Housekeeping genes</td>
<td>GAPDH</td>
<td>Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase</td>
<td>Hs00999005_m1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RPLPO</td>
<td>Ribosomal protein, large, P0</td>
<td>Hs00999902_m1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

qRT-PCR, quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction; RAR, retinoic acid-receptor.
washed three times, and then 2 × Read Buffer T (Meso Scale Discovery) was added to each well; the signals were read by the SECTOR 2400 Imager (Meso Scale Discovery). Standard curves were generated and the assay values of the samples were interpolated from the curves. The sensitivity of the assays for CCL2, CCL5, and IL-8 was 0.769 pg/mL, 0.514 pg/mL, and 0.213 pg/mL, respectively.

Statistical analysis

Demographic and clinical data were analyzed using SPSS ver. 19.0 (SPSS Inc., Chicago, IL, USA). All other data analysis was conducted within the R statistical environment. When analyzing qRT-PCR data, group comparisons were evaluated via a gene-wise linear model where gene expression was treated as a response and explained by the group variable while adjusting for gestational age. The derived p-values were further adjusted for false discovery rate (FDR) to account for simultaneous testing on multiple genes. An FDR-adjusted p-value (pFDR value) of .1 and a 1.5-fold change were used as thresholds for significance.

Immunosassay data were log-transformed, matched with the qRT-PCR data for samples from the TIL and TNL groups, and represented by a scatter plot. Pearson correlations and their p-values were computed to assess the linear associations of measurements between enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay and qRT-PCR. To account for heterogeneous sample groups, an ANOVA comparison between the linear models was also conducted.

Immunoreactive scores generated by two independent examiners were averaged to represent the quantity of a given protein in a given patient sample. The two patient groups were compared by using a t-test. A p-value of < .05 was considered statistically significant.

RESULTS

Genes with the highest expression in the decidua at term gestation

Genes included in this expression profiling study (Table 2) were selected according to their biological plausibility and/or their implication in decidual physiology. As a good concordance with published evidence, insulin-like growth factor-binding protein 1 (IGFBP1) and galectin-1 (LGALS1), genes with predominant endometrial expression among all human tissues, had their highest expression in the decidua at term gestation among the 46 tested genes (Fig. 1A). The expression of IGFBP1 was 28-fold higher (p = .01) in cells microdissected from the decidua than in those collected from the chorionamnion as an internal control in our study (Fig. 1B). This is in accord with the strong IGFBP-1 immunoreactivity in the decidual layer compared to the faint IGFBP-1 immunostaining in other layers of the membranes (Fig. 1C), confirming the accurate isolation of decidual cel populations by laser microdissection.

Genes with differential expression in the decidua in term labor

The expression of 11 genes was significantly different in TIL cases compared to TNL cases. These genes encode for sex steroid receptors, chemokines, cytokines, and galectins as well as an endometrial protein, a prostaglandin synthesis enzyme, and a transcription factor involved in uterine development.
Genes involved in sex steroid signaling and decidual development

Among the sex steroid receptor genes, estrogen receptor 1 (ESR1) and the progesterone receptor membrane component 2 (PGRMC2) had differential expression between the groups (Fig. 1A). ESR1 had an 8.1-fold (pFDR = .032) while PGRMC2 had a 1.7-fold (pFDR = .096) higher expression in TIL cases com-

Fig. 2. Differential expression of genes involved in sex steroid signaling and decidual development. Box-plots represent gene expression levels (–ΔCt) in the decidua of women with no labor at term (TNL, n = 15) or those in term labor (TIL, n = 14). Estrogen receptor 1 (ESR1) (A), progesterone receptor membrane component 2 (PGRMC2) (B), and homeobox A11 (HOXA11) (C) expression was higher in TIL cases compared to TNL cases (8.1-fold, false discovery rate–adjusted p-value [pFDR] = .032; 1.7-fold, pFDR = .096; 4-fold, pFDR = .032, respectively).

Fig. 3. Differential expression of chemokines, cytokines, and prostaglandin signaling genes. Box-plots represent gene expression levels (–ΔCt), while immunohistochemical (IHC) staining and immunoscoring show protein abundance in the decidua of women with no labor at term (TNL, n = 15) or those in term labor (TIL, n = 14). (A) Relative mRNA expression of interleukin 8 (IL8) in the decidua was higher in TIL cases than in TNL cases (7.3-fold, false discovery rate–adjusted p-value [pFDR] = .004; left panel). IHC staining confirmed higher expression of IL-8 in TIL cases than in TNL cases (middle panels), also quantified by immunoscoring (right panel; TIL 1.5 vs TNL 0.9; p = .027). (B, C) Relative mRNA expression of chemokine C-C motif ligand 2 (CCL2) and CCL5 in the decidua was lower in TIL cases than in TNL cases (8.7-fold, pFDR = .013; 3.5-fold, pFDR = .052, respectively; left panel). IHC staining confirmed lower CCL2 protein expression in TIL cases than in TNL cases (middle panels), also quantified by immunoscoring (right panel: TIL 1.9 vs TNL 2.7; p < .0001). (D, E) Relative decidual mRNA expression of IL1B and PTGES was higher in TIL cases than in TNL cases (2.8-fold, pFDR = .037; 6.7-fold, pFDR = .032, respectively).
pared to TNL cases (Fig. 2A, B). Among the tested HOX genes involved in decidualization, HOXA11 had the highest expression in the decidua (Fig. 1A), and it had higher expression in TIL cases compared to TNL cases (4-fold, pFDR = .075) (Fig. 2C).

**Chemokine, cytokine, and prostaglandin signaling genes**

Among the investigated chemokine genes, IL8, CCL5, and CCL2 were the most abundantly expressed genes in the decidua (Fig. 1A). Two of these genes had differential expression between TIL cases and TNL cases (Fig. 3A–C). IL8 expression was higher in TIL cases compared to TNL cases at the RNA (7.3-fold, pFDR = .004) and protein (immunohistochemistry [IHC] score, TIL 1.5 vs TNL 0.9; p = .027) levels (Fig. 3A). In contrast, there were low expressions of CCL2 in TIL cases compared to TNL cases at the mRNA (8.7-fold, pFDR = .013) and protein (IHC score, TIL 1.9 vs TNL 2.7; p < .0001) levels (Fig. 3B). Decidual CCL5 mRNA expression levels were lower in TIL cases compared to TNL cases (3.5-fold, pFDR = .052) (Fig. 3C).

Compared to the tested cytokine genes, IL1B had the strongest expression in the decidua (Fig. 1A) and had an increased expression in TIL cases compared to TNL cases (2.8-fold, pFDR = .037) (Fig. 3D). Furthermore, among the prostaglandin signaling pathway genes, prostaglandin E synthase (PTGES) had higher expression levels in TIL cases compared to TNL cases (6.7-fold, pFDR = .032) (Fig. 3E).

**Genes encoding anti-inflammatory proteins**

Among the tested galectin genes, LGALS1 and LGALS3 had lower expression levels in TIL cases compared to TNL cases (LGALS1: 5.2-fold, pFDR = .039; LGALS3: 4.1-fold, pFDR = .075) (Fig. 4A, B). These findings were confirmed by immunostaining, as galectin-1 and galectin-3 proteins had decreased expression levels in TIL cases compared to TNL cases (galectin-1 IHC score, TIL 2.1 vs TNL 2.6, p = .016; galectin-3 IHC score, TIL 1.4 vs TNL 2.0, p = .041) (Fig. 4A, B).

Among the genes encoding for endometrial proteins, PAEP, one of the most abundantly expressed genes in the decidua, had reduced expression levels in TIL cases compared to TNL cases.

---

Fig. 4. Differential expression of anti-inflammatory mediators in the decidua. Box-plots represent gene expression levels (–ΔCt), while immunohistochemical (IHC) staining and immunoscoring show protein abundance in the decidua of women with no labor at term (TNL, n = 15) or those in term labor (TIL, n = 14). Galectin-1 (LGALS1) (A), galectin-3 (LGALS3) (B), and progestagen-associated endometrial protein (PAEP) (C) gene expression was lower in TIL cases than in TNL cases (5.2-fold, false discovery rate-adjusted p-value [pFDR] = .039; 4.1-fold, pFDR = .075; 12.6-fold, pFDR = .056, respectively). IHC staining confirmed lower galectin-1 (TIL 2.1 vs TNL 2.6, p = .016) (A), galectin-3 (B) (TIL 1.4 vs TNL 2.0, p = .041), and PAEP (C) (TIL 1.0 vs TNL 2.0, p = .003) expression in TIL cases than in TNL cases.
Comparison of decidual gene expression and maternal plasma concentrations of chemokines

In order to determine whether the local, decidual differential expression of chemokines is also reflected by changes in their systemic concentrations, maternal plasma samples collected at the time of delivery were analyzed with immunoassays for CCL2, CCL5, and IL-8. There was no difference in the concentrations of these chemokines between patient groups, and there was no correlation between the mRNA expression of these chemokines in the decidua and their protein concentrations in maternal plasma samples obtained from the same patients (Fig. 5).

DISCUSSION

Principal findings of the study

1) Transcriptomic analysis revealed differences in the expression of genes involved in developmental, signaling, and inflammatory pathways between decidual samples collected from women who delivered at TIL and TNL; 2) genes with the highest expression in the decidua at term included IGFBP1, LGALS1, and PAEP; (3) the expression of ESR1, HOXA11, IL1B, IL8, PGRMC2, and PTGES was higher in TIL cases compared to TNL cases; (4) the expression of CCL2, CCL5, LGALS1, LGALS3, and PAEP was lower in TIL cases compared to TNL cases; (5) immunostaining confirmed a high expression of IL-8 and a low expression of CCL2, galectin-1, and galectin-3 in TIL cases compared to TNL cases; and (6) no correlation between decidual gene expression and maternal plasma protein concentrations of CCL2, CCL5, and IL-8 was found.

Significance of differential gene expression in the decidua

Parturition is a result of pro-inflammatory processes in various gestational tissues, which interact with and orchestrate the terminal pathway of spontaneous labor. This common pathway includes anatomical, physiological, biochemical, endocrinological, immunological, and clinical events that occur in the mother and her fetus. Based on targeted and high-dimensional studies, a growing body of evidence has shown that all uterine components of this terminal pathway—the increased myometrial contractility and cervical ripening as well as the activation of the decidua/fetal membranes—undergo pro-inflammatory changes during labor. In spite of the similarities in gene expression signatures, the activation of certain biological pathways in various gestational tissues may be different. Unfortunately, the biological processes taking place in the decidua during spontaneous term parturition have been relatively underinvestigated. This is corroborated by a recent meta-analysis focusing on the transcriptomics of all human gestational tissues in the context of term and preterm birth. This study found that the most commonly studied tissues are the placenta (61%), the fetal membranes (12%), and the myometrium (12%), while the decidua had been the focus of only less than 5% of all investigations. Therefore, our study aimed to fill this gap in our understanding of the role of the decidua in the orchestration of pro-inflammatory pathways during spontaneous term parturition.

Hormonal regulation of the decidua during labor

The appropriate hormonal regulation and development of the decidua are fundamental in the establishment and maintenance of pregnancy. Among hormones, estrogen and progesterone play
the most important roles in these processes mediated by estrogen and progesterone receptors, while HOX genes are essential for endometrial development, growth, and differentiation under the regulation of estrogen and progesterone. Therefore, we studied the most relevant estrogen and progesterone receptors as well as HOX genes to gain insights into their decidual expression changes during term parturition. Members of all of these gene groups were found to have transcriptional changes, since ESR1, PGRMC2, and HOXA11 mRNA expression was increased in TIL cases compared to TNL cases.

ER\(\alpha\) (ESR1) is an estrogen receptor predominantly expressed in the uterus, and its expression elevates in the human myometrium during labor. Interestingly, the increased relative abundance of ER\(\alpha\), but not ER\(\beta\) (ESR2) mRNA, is associated with increased PR-A expression and PR-A/PR-B expression ratios in the human myometrium, which, in turn, is responsible for the inhibition of progesterone's anti-inflammatory actions mediated by PR-B. A similar increase in the PR-A/PR-B expression ratio was found in the decidua during term labor, which, in conjunction with our finding on the increased decidual ESR1 expression, may suggest that a similar regulatory process is effective in the decidua during term labor.

The decidualization of the human endometrium depends on the actions of progesterone promoted by the expression of nuclear PR isoforms in decidual cells, which are central to the genomic actions of progesterone. Moreover, the cellular responsiveness to this hormone also depends on the expression of the membrane progesterone receptors (mPR\(\alpha\), mPR\(\beta\), and mPR\(\gamma\)) and their adaptor proteins (PGRMC1 and PGRMC2), which act via a fast, "non-genomic pathway." Several studies support the idea that membrane PRs actually suppress the actions of nuclear PRs and promote myometrial contractility and that the PGRMC adaptor proteins are pivotal in enhancing the cell surface expression and receptor functions of membrane PRs. A recent proteomics study on chorionic decidua tissues revealed PGRMC2 to be up-regulated in samples from term and preterm labor samples compared to samples obtained from non-laboring women, implicating this protein in the hormonal regulation of parturition. Our finding of the higher decidual expression of PGRMC2 in laboring women, compared to non-laboring women, corroborates these earlier results and may suggest that this "non-genomic pathway" may be involved in the functional progesterone withdrawal in the decidua.

Previous in vitro studies showed that estrogen and progesterone facilitated the expression of developmental HOX genes (HOXA9, HOXA10, and HOXA11) in human decidual cells at term, among which HOXA10 and HOXA11 are expressed in the decidua from early pregnancy throughout gestation. Furthermore, it has been shown that the interactions of HOXA11 with CCAAT/enhancer binding protein beta (CEBPB) and forkhead box O1 (FOXO1) are especially necessary for the regulation of decidual gene expression during the decidualization of endometrial fibroblasts. In this context, it is of interest that FOXO1 can promote IL-1\(\beta\), IL-6, IL-8, and cyclooxygenase-2 expression and the release of prostaglandins as well as matrix metalloproteinase 9 (MMP-9) expression and MMP activity as detected in pregnant human myometrial cells. It is possible that the increased HOXA11 expression in the decidua of the TIL patients, compared to the TNL patients, who participated in our study may be related to the upstream regulatory events including ESR1 up-regulation and estrogen-mediated actions as well as downstream pro-inflammatory pathways involving the cooperation of HOXA11 with FOXO1 in the TIL cases.

Chemokines, cytokines, and pro-inflammatory mediators in labor

Among the mediators of pro-inflammatory pathways, chemokines are essential for the recruitment and activation of various immune cell populations into distinct tissue compartments at the maternal-fetal interface. These infiltrating immune cells are involved in the orchestration of local inflammation, partly by releasing cytokines that regulate prostaglandin production. Members of these gene groups of chemokines, cytokines, and receptors (CCL2, CCL5, IL8, IL1B, and PTGES) that we studied had transcriptional changes in TIL cases compared to TNL cases.

CCL2 and CCL5 have been extensively studied in different gestational tissues as important inducers of immune cell infiltration. CCL2, a monocyte chemoattractant, has been studied in the context of pro-inflammatory changes and monocyte influx/activation in the myometrium, cervix, and fetal membranes during term and preterm parturition. CCL5, another monocyte chemoattractant that has additional activity toward T cells, has been implicated in the regulation of inflammatory responses and in the recruitment of macrophages to the implantation site in early pregnancy. The role of CCL5 in the mechanisms of human parturition is demonstrated by the increased concentration of this chemokine in the amniotic fluid of women who undergo term labor compared to those who deliver at term without labor. The concentration of CCL5 is also higher in the amniotic fluid of women who undergo term or preterm labor with microbial invasion of the amniotic cavity than in those without this complication, supporting the role for CCL5 in the regula-
tion of the host response against intrauterine infection. Of note, monocytes/macrophages are the second most abundant leukocyte population in the human decidua that contributes to parturition by expressing pro-inflammatory mediators (e.g., IL-1β, IL-6, TNFα, and prostaglandins) and that plays a key role in tissue remodeling.117 Our findings demonstrate higher CCL2 and CCL5 mRNA expression in the decidua prior to labor, compared to TIL cases, which was validated for CCL2 expression at the protein level. These results are in agreement with rodent experiments showing pre-partum recruitment of macrophages into the uterine decidua in rats and mice110-113 and with the increase in the proportion of human choriodecidual macrophages from preterm to term gestation.114 Although the proportion of these macrophages among human choriodecidual leukocytes does not change before and after term labor,114 it was recently demonstrated that macrophages undergo a pro-inflammatory M1-like polarization in the decidua during spontaneous term labor.115 Therefore, it is likely that macrophages infiltrate the human decidua prior to term gestation, and they acquire an M1 phenotype prior to parturition.115 Concentrations of CCL2 and CCL5 in the maternal blood of women who undergo term labor are similar to those in women who undergo term delivery without labor.116 In accord with this earlier finding, there was no correlation between decidual mRNA abundance and concentrations of CCL2 and CCL5 in maternal plasma, which further confirms their importance in the local inflammatory process. Overall, these data suggest that monocyte recruitment into the decidua and macrophage-mediated decidual inflammatory processes are early events during parturition and precede the CCL2- and CCL5-mediated recruitment of monocytes into other uterine tissue compartments.

The local elevated expression of IL-8, a chief chemokine and activator of neutrophils,117,118 fulfills multifaceted roles, both in humans and other examined mammals during term and preterm parturition.119,120 and may determine the timing of neutrophil infiltration and activation in various compartments in the uterine cavity,121 where these cells release cytokines and MMPs to contribute to labor and post-partum wound sealing and healing.122 Accordingly, the expression of IL-8 by a variety of cells—including monocytes/macrophages, fibroblasts, decidual stromal cells, cervical epithelial cells, and amnion cells119,122—have been reported to be elevated in gestational tissues and amniotic fluid in term and preterm parturition.124-133 Our findings of the higher expression of IL-8 mRNA and protein in the decidua in TIL cases compared to TNL cases support these previous reports. Interestingly, studies that focus on IL-8 concentrations in maternal blood are controversial. One study found significantly higher IL-8 plasma concentrations in laboring women compared to non-laboring women who delivered at term or preterm,116 while another study showed no difference between these groups.134 Our study agrees with the latter, since we found no difference between the TNL and TIL groups and no correlation between decidual mRNA expression and maternal plasma concentrations of IL-8.

IL-1β and its receptor IL1R are widely expressed in human gestational tissues, where they are involved in the pro-inflammatory response during labor;135-137 this is supported by the higher IL-1β concentrations in the amniotic, choriodecidual, and placental tissues11 as well as in the amniotic fluid138 of patients with spontaneous labor compared to those who delivered at term without labor. Our data suggests that the increased decidual IL1β expression in TIL cases compared to TNL cases is consistent with these earlier findings and further highlights the key role of IL-1β in parturition. As functional evidence, in vitro experiments with human decidual cells revealed that IL-1β treatment alters the expression of genes and microRNAs that function in pro-inflammatory signaling, including the induction of numerous cytokines and chemokines,139 such as IL-8,140,141 as well as prostaglandin production.141

Prostaglandins have central roles in the separate but integrated physiological events of parturition: fetal membrane rupture, cervical dilatation, myometrial contractility, placental separation, and uterine involution.142-144 There is abundant evidence showing that the decidua, among other gestational tissues, is a major source of prostaglandins in parturition.141 PGE2 is the most abundant prostaglandin in the decidua, but decidual cells can also produce detectable amounts of prostaglandin E2 (PGE2),145 which was increased in decidual cells obtained during spontaneous vaginal delivery at term compared to those obtained before the onset of labor.146

Among the prostaglandin-synthesizing enzymes, PTGS2, the rate-limiting enzyme of the synthesis of prostaglandins, was found to be up-regulated in the human myometrium,102 but not in the decidua,147 for TIL cases compared to TNL cases. Among other key enzymes of prostaglandin synthesis, PTGES, involved in PGE2 synthesis, was elevated in the amnion in TIL cases.148 The same study found increased expression levels of AKR1C3 (aldo-keto reductase), involved in PGE2 synthesis, in the choriodecidual in TIL cases.148 The expression of CBR1 (carbonyl reductase), responsible for the conversion of PGE2 to PGF2α and thereby favoring PGF2α elevation, was also detected in the decidua,148 but no difference was found in its expression between
TIL and TNL cases. Our study only investigated PTGES from these three genes and found its increased expression in TIL cases compared to TNL cases. Since various pro-inflammatory cytokines\textsuperscript{169} and estrogen can induce PTGES expression requiring nuclear factor κB and estrogen receptor signaling pathways, respectively,\textsuperscript{160} the elevated expression of PTGES during labor in the decidual inflammatory microenvironment is not surprising. All of these results may suggest that local inflammatory pathways induce PTGES, leading to heightened PGE\textsubscript{2} production as well as increased production of PGE\textsubscript{2α} via enzymatic conversion.

**Transcription factors for T-cell polarization in labor**

The proper balance between innate and adaptive immune cells in gestational tissues is required to sustain pregnancy, and an alteration of this balance may lead to labor at term or preterm gestation.\textsuperscript{121} Most studies investigated the roles of macrophage and neutrophil infiltration into gestational tissues during labor; however, the importance of adaptive immune responses in parturition has only recently been recognized.\textsuperscript{114} In human pregnancies, almost one-half of the leukocytes in the decidua basalis are CD3\textsuperscript{+} T cells in term cases compared to the low decidual percentage (6\%–30\%) of these immune cells observed in the first trimester.\textsuperscript{111} It has been proposed that the high proportion of T cells concentrated in the choriodecidua is a result of the expansion of the total number of CD4\textsuperscript{+} CD25\textsuperscript{+} regulatory T cells (Tregs)\textsuperscript{114} induced by pregnancy.\textsuperscript{152,153} It was suggested that these T cells are recruited during term gestation, particularly during parturition, to participate in the cascade of inflammatory mediators at the maternal-fetal interface.\textsuperscript{154} Choriodecidual CD4\textsuperscript{+} T cells display a memory-like phenotype and express high levels of IL-1β, TNFα, and MMP-9 in spontaneous labor at term,\textsuperscript{114} suggesting that these immune cells have an effector-memory phenotype.

The finding that different T helper (Th) lymphocyte populations (Th1, Th2, Treg, and Th17) could be identified in the early human decidua based on the expression of their lineage-specific differentiation transcription factors (TBX21, GATA3, FOXP3, and RORC)\textsuperscript{155} gave us the idea to investigate various Th subsets in term decidua. The mRNAs for all of these transcription factors were found to be expressed, showing the presence of the four Th subsets in term decidua; however, no differences were found between the two groups. It is possible that certain differences could have been detected using phenotypic T-cell markers as previously reported\textsuperscript{136} and also that the functional state of these cells may change during parturition.

**Anti-inflammatory molecules in labor**

While we detected an increased decidual expression among key pro-inflammatory mediator genes, the mRNA and protein expression levels of some anti-inflammatory molecules (galectin-1, galectin-3, and PAEP) were lower in TIL cases compared to TNL cases.

Galectins are secreted proteins, multifunctional regulators of fundamental cellular processes. This is due to their high affinity for β-galactosides, which allow their binding to a broad range of glycosylated proteins critical for cell-cell and cell-extracellular matrix interactions\textsuperscript{157} and the regulation of inflammation and immune responses.\textsuperscript{158} Some galectins with strong expression at the maternal–fetal interface have been implicated in key functions of pregnancy maintenance in eutherian mammals.\textsuperscript{80,159,160} Among these, galectin-1 and galectin-3 are expressed in the decidua under the regulation of sex steroids both in humans and mice\textsuperscript{148,161,162} and are involved in decidual embryo implantation.\textsuperscript{161} Of importance, decidual galectin-1 is one of the most potent mediators of maternal-fetal immune tolerance acting through multiple mechanisms, including the induction of tolerogenic dendritic cells, which, in turn, promote the expansion of IL-10–secreting regulatory T cells, as evidenced in mice.\textsuperscript{164} Galectin-1 also has the ability to induce the apoptosis of Th1 cells, thereby causing a shift toward the Th2-type immune response, which is favorable during pregnancy.\textsuperscript{165} Extracellular galectin-3 also has pro-apoptotic activity\textsuperscript{166} and, thus, may have similar apoptotic functions compared to galectin-1 in the decidua. Our findings show decreased decidual LGALS1 and LGALS3 expression, which suggests that galectin-1 and galectin-3 may have important roles in the regulation of decidual immune cell populations and in the maintenance of a local microenvironment that favors progesterone production and pregnancy maintenance.

PAEP, also known as glycodelin, placental protein 14, and progestagen-dependent endometrial protein, is a glycoprotein that has several isoforms according to its glycosylation pattern.\textsuperscript{167,168} The most abundant glycodelin isoform, glycodelin-A, is highly expressed in the decidua\textsuperscript{53} and has major anti-inflammatory properties.\textsuperscript{169} Decidual PAEP expression is regulated by progesterone,\textsuperscript{170} and its immunoregulatory actions require estrogen priming.\textsuperscript{171} This is in agreement with the role of PAEP as a potent regulator of predominant immune cell lineages at the maternal-fetal interface\textsuperscript{172} and the capability of PAEP to induce the apoptosis of activated T cells,\textsuperscript{173} the inhibition of monocyte chemotaxis,\textsuperscript{174} and the induction of monocyte apoptosis.\textsuperscript{175} Our results demonstrate decreased PAEP mRNA abundance and protein expression in TIL cases compared to TNL cases, which

---

https://doi.org/10.4132/jptm.2016.12.20

http://jpaltholtm.org/
may suggest that glycodelin-A, similar to galectins, is involved in the maintenance of a local immune balance in the decidua.

Our study also targeted the investigation of anti-inflammatory cytokines, but neither the decidual mRNA expression of \( \text{IL4} \) nor \( \text{IL10} \) changed with labor status at term. This may support other findings demonstrating no differences between IL-10 protein levels in decidual cells isolated from women who underwent labor compared to those who did not undergo labor at term.\(^{47}\) However, the basal choriodecidual production rates of IL-10 have been found to be significantly decreased with labor,\(^{176}\) which relates to our findings on PAEP and galectins. This suggests that changes may also occur in IL-10 mRNA/protein expression at certain time-points during term labor, and that IL-10 may also be a part of the local molecular mechanisms that maintain decidual quiescence during pregnancy.

**Strengths and limitations**

The strengths of our study include the precise collection of decidual cells using laser microdissection, which allowed insights into decidual transcriptomic changes during spontaneous term parturition. High-throughput qRT-PCR enabled the parallel investigation of 46 genes involved in a large number of pathways. Immunostaining and semiquantitative immunoscoring of tissue sections from the same chorioamniotic membranes supported the decidual investigation of differentially expressed genes at the protein level. The comparisons between local decidual and maternal systemic expression of certain genes and their protein products in the same patients provided an additional strength of our

---

**Fig. 6.** Conceptual framework. The increased decidual expression of a signaling factor responsible for decidual maturation and development (\( \text{HOXA11} \)) is preceded by the increased expression of chemokines (CCL2 and CCL5), which may stimulate the early recruitment of monocytes into the decidua as the onset of labor approaches. These immune cells will be activated by the local microenvironment and contribute to the orchestration of inflammation. With the initiation of parturition, the decidual expression of anti-inflammatory mediators (\( \text{LGALS1} \), \( \text{LGALS3} \), and \( \text{PAEP} \)) decreases, while the expression of pro-inflammatory mediators (\( \text{IL1B} \) and \( \text{PTGES} \)) and steroid receptors (\( \text{ESR1} \) and \( \text{PGRMC2} \)) increases, contributing to "functional progesterone withdrawal" and heightened inflammation, eventually leading to uterine contractions, cervical ripening, and membrane rupture. The relatively late increase of \( \text{IL8} \) expression will be followed by the recruitment of neutrophils, which plays a key role in tissue repair. These results strengthen earlier findings on the decidua being the earliest among gestational tissues that get primed during parturition. CCL2, chemokine C-C motif ligand 2; CCL5, chemokine C-C motif ligand 5; DSCs, decidual stromal cells; ESR1, estrogen receptor 1; \( \text{HOXA11} \), homeobox A11; \( \text{IL1B} \), interleukin-1β; \( \text{IL8} \), interleukin 8; \( \text{LGALS1} \), galectin-1; \( \text{LGALS3} \), galectin-3; Mo, monocytes; \( \text{MΦ} \), macrophages; \( \text{PAEP} \), progestogen-associated endometrial protein; \( \text{PGRMC2} \), progesterone receptor membrane component 2; PMNs, neutrophil granulocytes; \( \text{PTGES} \), prostaglandin E synthase.

http://jpatholtm.org/  
https://doi.org/10.4132/jptm.2016.12.20
study. This approach is unique since previous studies mainly focused on the investigation of the fetal membranes as a whole without illustrating which part of the membranes is responsible for the parturition-specific changes.

Limitations of our study included the relatively small sample sizes due to the technical limitations (low yield, high labor intensity, and slow workspace) of laser microdissection. Many parturition-related molecules as well as alternative splicing variants of the examined genes have not been investigated since the tiny amount of RNA samples, which could be obtained with our methodology, only allowed the study of a maximum of 48 genes in our high-throughput qRT-PCR system. That is why we selected several key parturition-related genes with well-characterized decidual expression in spontaneous term labor as positive controls for our study as well as many other genes not yet characterized in the context of term labor. Since we examined gene expression signatures at two time-points, it was not possible to analyze in detail the exact temporal changes in the cascade of decidual gene expression changes as term parturition progressed.

Conclusions

Our data proposes that, with the initiation of parturition, the decidual expression of anti-inflammatory mediators decreases while the expression of pro-inflammatory mediators and steroid receptors increases, affecting downstream signaling pathways that lead to chorioamniotic membrane weakening and myometrial contractions (Fig. 6). Our results agree with earlier findings that suggest that the decidua is one of the earliest gestational tissues that becomes primed during parturition. Nevertheless, functional studies are required to further explore and establish a causal link between the pathways that were found in our descriptive study during term labor.

Electronic Supplementary Material

Supplementary materials are available at the Journal of Pathology and Translational Medicine (http://jpatholtm.org).

Conflicts of Interest

No potential conflict of interest relevant to this article was reported.

Acknowledgments

The authors thank Lorraine Nikita, Newaj Abdullah, Ryan Cantarella, Ruowen Liu, Dayna Sheldon, and the nursing staff of the Perinatology Research Branch for their technical assistance, and Andrea Bernard, Maureen McGerty, and Sara Tipton for their critical readings of the manuscript.

This research was supported, in part, by the Perinatology Research Branch, Division of Intramural Research, Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development, National Institutes of Health, U. S. Department of Health and Human Services (NICHD/NIH/DHHS); and, in part, by Federal funds from NICHD/NIH/DHHS under Contract No. HHSN275201300006C. Data analysis, interpretation, and manuscript writing were also supported by the Hungarian Academy of Sciences Momentum Grant “LP2014-7/2014” (to N.G.T.) and the OTKA-PD 104398” Grant (to A.B.). The funders had no role in the study design, data collection and analysis, decision to publish, or preparation of the manuscript.

REFERENCES


38. Kniss DA, Rovin B, Fertel RH, Zimmerman PD. Blockade NF-kap-


150. Frasor J, Weaver AE, Pradhan M, Mehta K. Synergistic up-regulation of prostaglandin E synthase expression in breast cancer cells by 17beta-estradiol and proinflammatory cytokines. Endocrinolo-
A Small Case Series of Intravascular Large B-Cell Lymphoma with Unexpected Findings: Subset of Cases with Concomitant Extravascular Central Nervous System (CNS) Involvement Mimicking Primary CNS Lymphoma

Kate Poropatich · Dave Dittmann
Yi-Hua Chen · Kirtee Raparia
Kristy Wolniak · Juehua Gao

Department of Pathology, Northwestern University Feinberg School of Medicine, Chicago, IL, USA

Background: Intravascular large B-cell lymphoma (IVLBCL) is a rare type of extranodal lymphoma with growth mainly in the lumina of vessels. We studied a small series of IVLBCL and focused on its central nervous system (CNS) involvement. Methods: Searching the medical records of Northwestern Memorial Hospital, we identified five cases of IVLBCL from January 2007 to January 2015. Clinical information, hematoxylin and eosin stained histologic slides and immunohistochemistry studies were reviewed for all cases. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) analysis for the immunoglobulin (Ig) heavy and light chain gene rearrangement was performed on all five cases.

Results: Three of the five cases of IVLBCL were autopsies. Patients' age ranged from 56 to 84. CNS involvement was present in two cases—in both patients, the CNS involvement showed an extravascular pattern with confluent sheet-like formation. PCR analysis confirmed that in one case the systemic intravascular and CNS extravascular components were clonally identical.

Conclusions: In a small case series of IVLBCL, we observed that CNS involvement by IVLBCL often has an extravascular morphology, but is clonally identical to the intravascular counterpart by PCR analysis. As IVLBCL can have a rapidly progressing poor outcome, it should be kept in the differential diagnoses for patients presenting with lymphoma of the CNS. The presence of extravascular growth patterns in the CNS should not exclude IVLBCL as a diagnosis.

Key Words: Intravascular large B-cell lymphoma

Intravascular large B-cell lymphoma (IVLBCL) is a rare type of extranodal large B-cell lymphoma characterized by the selective growth of large lymphoma cells within smaller vessel lumina.1 Classified as a “Mature B cell” neoplasm in the 2008 World Health Organization (WHO) classification,1 IVLBCL is considered phenotypically and morphologically similar to diffuse large B cell lymphoma (DLBCL). However, with less than 500 reported cases, far less is understood about this non-Hodgkin’s extranodal lymphoma. With vague clinical symptoms and the absence of lymphadenopathy characteristic of other lymphomas, this entity is thought to be widely underdiagnosed with clinical deterioration occurring rapidly and often resulting in the diagnosis being made at the time of autopsy.2-3

IVLBCL is divided into “Western” and “Eastern” variants, with the former showing a high frequency of central nervous system (CNS) and skin involvement and the latter frequently associated with bone marrow (BM) involvement and hemophagocytic syndrome.6 When involving the BM, a predominantly sinusoidal pattern is seen.7 The CNS is the most frequent site of involvement in IVLBCL, with over half of all cases presenting with neurologic symptoms and subsequent pathologic evidence of disease in the CNS.8-10 It is important to recognize CNS involvement as early as possible in these patients as they have an overall worse clinical outcome and survival rate compared to other sites of involvement such as the skin.10

In a small subset of IVLBCL cases there is histomorphologic variability and perivascular involvement has been demonstrated in peripheral organs including the stomach, liver, adrenal glands, bladder, and testis.9,11-18 However, little is known about the histologic heterogeneity of CNS IVLBCL. In particularly aggressive instances involving the CNS, concomitant minimal perivascular and extravascular tumor can be seen. To date, there have been over 10 documented cases of IVLBCL showing an extravascular growth pattern in the CNS, including some cases that presented...
Intravascular Large B-Cell Lymphoma with mass-like lesions on magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). Most striking about these cases is that they mimic patterns seen in primary CNS B-cell lymphoma based on angiocentric growth of large, atypical B cells that have a predilection for the leptomeninges. It remains unclear what the incidence of this morphologic pattern is in the CNS of patients presenting with IVLBCL.

To further elucidate this question, we studied five cases of IVLBCL and observed two cases with CNS involvement that demonstrated an entirely perivascular and extravascular pattern without an intravascular component. For the first time, we used conventional polymerase chain reaction (PCR) to demonstrate that the extravascular CNS component has the same B-cell clone as the pure intravascular involvement seen in the rest of the organs.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Sample characteristics

We searched medical records of Northwestern Memorial Hospital from January 2007 to January 2015, and identified five cases of IVLBCL that included three autopsies and two living patients. Clinical information was collected. Hematoxylin and eosin–stained diagnostic slides and immunohistochemical stains were reviewed. This study was approved by Northwestern University Institutional Review Board.

Immunohistochemistry

Immunohistochemical staining was performed on formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded tissue (FFPE). Antigen retrieval and immunohistochemical stains were performed on an automated immunostainer following the manufacturer’s protocol (Ventana Medical Systems, Tuscon, AZ, USA). The following predilute antibodies were used: CD3 (Ventana Medical Systems), BCL2 (Cell Marque, Rocklin, CA, USA), BCL6 (Cell Marque), CD20 (Dako, Carpinteria, CA, USA), PAX5 (Cell Marque), CD10 (Leica, Buffalo Grove, IL, USA), and MUM1 (Leica). Determination for germinal center B cell (GCB) and non-GCB was based on expression patterns for CD10, BCL-6, and MUM1 per Hans et al. criteria. A GCB phenotype was considered if a case was positive for CD10. A non-GCB phenotype was considered with any of the following expression patterns: CD10¹ BCL6¹ MUM1¹, CD10¹ BCL6 MUM1¹, and CD10¹ BCL6 MUM1. Positive and negative controls were performed with all cases and showed appropriate staining pattern.

Clonality assessment by PCR

Lymphoma cells were macrodissected from FFPE sections. DNA was quantified by spectrophotometry with NanoDrop 1000 (Thermo Scientific, Waltham, MA, USA). Isolated DNA was tested for gene rearrangements with multiplex PCR using universal primer sets (Invivoscribe Gene Clonality Assays, San Diego, CA, USA) for IgH V-J FR1, FR2, and FR3 primer sets as well as light-chain analysis with IgK V-J primer sets. IgK clonality testing utilizing two master mixes, Tube A and Tube B, to target conserved regions within variable (Vk1-7) and joining regions (Jk1-5). The PCR products were detected by capillary gel electrophoresis on an ABI 3130XL genetic analyzer (Applied Biosystems, Foster City, CA, USA). Dominant peaks were considered to be monoclonal if they were at least three-times the height of the polyclonal background and indeterminate monoclonal cases applied to peaks that were between two-times and three-times the height of the background.

RESULTS

Clinical features

From our database search we obtained the records for five patient cases with a diagnosis of IVLBCL, including three autopsy patients and two living patients, both from outside hospitals, who sought a second-opinion diagnosis at our institution (Table 1). Three cases were female and two were male. The age range at the time of diagnosis was 56–84 years.

Among autopsy cases, case 1 was an 81-year-old male who suffered from rapidly progressive respiratory failure accompanied by coagulopathy. His laboratories were remarkable for splenomegaly, anemia and thrombocytopenia. He passed away abruptly prior to any further medical work-up and an autopsy was requested. Case 2 was a 76-year-old otherwise healthy female who presented with altered mental status, anemia, fever, hypotension, and renal failure with rapid neurological decompensation, ultimately resulting in death and a subsequent autopsy. Case 3 was an 84-year-old male who presented with three months of fevers and chills and idiopathic thrombocytopenia purpura that did not respond to treatment with intravenous immunoglobulin and steroids. Following his death, a limited ‘abdomen-only’ autopsy was performed.

Cases 4 and 5 were living patients at the time of diagnosis. Case 4 was a 61-year-old female who presented with a primary complaint of 6 months of a progressive skin rash and urticaria accompanied by weakness and intermittent fevers. Laboratory work-up was notable for mild pancytopenia. A skin biopsy was
Poropatich K, et al. performed, which revealed IVLBCL. A BM biopsy was negative for lymphoma. The patient underwent treatment with rituximab-cytosar, doxorubicin, vincristine and prednisone (R-CHOP) and went into clinical remission. However, 6 months later, the patient presented with sudden loss of consciousness and laboratory findings remarkable for a markedly elevated lactate dehydrogenase. An MRI was ordered that revealed a 4.5 cm left frontal brain mass with cystic degeneration. A repeat biopsy of her BM was also performed and was negative for lymphomatous involvement. Following a diagnosis of CNS B-cell lymphoma, she was treated with a new chemotherapy regimen of rituximab-methotrexate, procarbazine and vincristine (R-MPV), intrathecal methotrexate, and autologous stem cell transplantation. She responded positively to the treatment and follow-up MRIs showed resolution of the brain lesion. Case 5 was a 56-year-old female who presented with a history of abdominal skin rash clinically suggestive of acute panniculitis, prompting a skin biopsy of the lesion that was consistent with IVLBCL. A BM biopsy was performed at the time of diagnosis, which was negative for lymphoma.

**Histologic, immunophenotypic, and molecular findings**

In all three autopsy cases, intravascular lymphoma cells were present with extensive multi-system involvement as small vessels filled with large cells with scant cytoplasm, vesicular nuclei, and
prominent nucleoli. In case 1, histology showed intravascular lymphomatous involvement of multiple organs including the lungs, heart, adrenal glands, esophagus, stomach, pancreas, intestines, kidneys, prostate, and bladder. The largest tumor burden was within the small vessels of the lung interstitium. A CD20 immunostain confirmed that the vessels were distended and filled with large B cells (Fig. 1). A brain dissection was not performed. In case 2, multiple organs were also involved, which included the brain, skin, breast, heart, lungs, liver, adrenal glands, stomach, pancreas, and intestines. The largest tumor burden was observed in the brain, including the cerebral hemispheres, meninges, midbrain, pons and basal ganglia, which demonstrated purely perivascular growth. The pituitary was also involved, and it showed near total effacement of the parenchyma with large, solid sheets of these cells in a sheet-like architecture with an identical morphology to the perivascular component in the other locations in the brain as well as the intravascular component seen in other organs (Fig. 2). A BM biopsy showed intrasinusoidal infiltration of neoplastic B cells. Case 3 revealed predominantly intravascular involvement of large B cells in adrenal glands, bladder, stomach, pancreas, intestines, appendix, and liver. A brain dissection was not performed.

In cases 4 and 5, skin biopsies revealed large B cells with irregular nuclear contours and prominent nucleoli filling small vessels of the dermis. The patient in case 4 underwent a lumbar puncture after developing neurologic symptoms with a brain mass in the left frontal cortex on MRI, that showed rare atypical large B cells in the cerebrospinal fluid. A biopsy of the brain lesion revealed atypical B cells in the superficial subcortical brain parenchyma organized in sheets and with clustering around
small vascular spaces, without discernible intravascular involvement (Fig. 3).

For all cases, the cell of origin for the neoplastic large cells was consistent with the non-GCB phenotype according to the Hans et al. algorithm. More specifically, the large B cells in cases 1–4 were CD10–BCL6–MUM1+; and the large B cells in case 5 showed CD10–BCL6–MUM1+ staining pattern. In case 2, the neoplastic cells from the extravascular CNS involvement had the same non-GCB phenotype as the intravascular component.

Immunoglobulin gene rearrangement studies were performed

---

**Fig. 3.** A 61-year-old female with progressive skin rash and a diagnosis of intravascular large B-cell lymphoma who subsequently developed neurologic symptoms (case 4). (A) Brain biopsy (left frontal cortex) reveals lymphoid infiltrates in predominantly extravascular pattern. (B) CD20 highlights large B cells in the perivascular infiltrates. (C) Brain biopsy reveals sheets of large cells with vesicular chromatin and prominent nucleoli. (D) Diagnostic skin biopsy reveals large lymphoma cells filling the lumina of capillary vessels in the dermis in the same patient.

**Table 2.** Immunoglobulin heavy chain and light chain gene rearrangement analysis for five cases of IVLBCL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Immunoglobulin gene rearrangement by PCR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IgH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 1</td>
<td>Negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 2</td>
<td>Positive (319 bp, 254 bp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS: meninges</td>
<td>Negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS: pituitary</td>
<td>Positive (254 bp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 3</td>
<td>Negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 4</td>
<td>Negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 5</td>
<td>Negative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IVLBCL, intravascular large B-cell lymphoma; PCR, polymerase chain reaction; CNS, central nervous system.
In this study, we reported five cases of IVLBCL, comprised of three autopsy cases and two living patient cases. In all three autopsy cases, the patients died before or shortly after the diagnosis was established. All cases demonstrated extensive organ involvement by the lymphoma cells. Not surprisingly, we observed that IVLBCL is a highly aggressive entity with non-specific clinical findings and where other differentials are more commonly exhausted, which delays the diagnosis and leads to unsalvageable clinical outcomes. In keeping with past findings, our findings confirm that IVLBCL is predominantly non-germinal center B cell in origin as all five cases in this study showed this phenotype.

The CNS is the most common site to be involved by IVBCL—up to two-thirds of all cases of IVLBCL—and is a frequent site of intra-organ recurrence. Approximately one-half of all cases of IVLBCL involving the brain are diagnosed post-mortem. Diagnosing IVLBCL premortem in the setting of CNS involvement is difficult because patients often present with non-specific encephalopathic symptoms, and less frequently stroke-like symptoms including extremity paralysis. Among living patients diagnosed with CNS-IVLBCL, a subset of cases—approximately one-third—have been found to survive to 2 years following initial diagnosis. In our small series of five IVLBCL, two patients developed neurologic symptoms. Both showed biopsy-proven CNS involvement of IVLBCL. Interestingly, in both cases, the CNS involvement was exclusively extravascular characterized by perivascular infiltrate of the abnormal large lymphocytes or confluent sheet like growth. It remains unknown how common the extravascular morphology is in the CNS of IVLBCL patients. In one study, two cases had CNS IVLBCL with a predominant angiocentric pattern, accounting for one-third of the cases in that study. In a separate study of five cases of CNS IVLBCL, all five had predominantly extravascular parenchymal involvement. Albeit these were small cohorts of cases, extravascular extension into the CNS parenchyma by IVLBCL is probably a more common phenomenon than currently appreciated.

When presenting with primarily CNS symptoms, IVLBCL can mimic CNS B-cell lymphoma and fail to tip off clinicians to look for a more systemic lymphomatous component. Primary CNS B-cell lymphoma, also a rare variant of DLBCL, has a proclivity to show angiocentric proliferation of neoplastic B cells. In one instance, the perivascular growth pattern in the CNS in a patient with established IVLBCL resulted in an entirely separate diagnosis of primary CNS lymphoma being made, potentially creating unnecessary confusion. Our findings raise the importance of keeping IVLBCL in the differential of primary CNS lymphomas and that the presence of perivascular growth
patterns should not exclude IVLCL as a diagnosis. It is important to identify CNS involvement in patients with IVLCL as they have a worse clinical outcome than those without CNS involvement and require closer clinical monitoring.10

In our series, both cases 4 and 5 presented with cutaneous involvement as their initial manifestation of IVLCL, raising the possibility of a “cutaneous variant.” The “cutaneous variant” is thought to occur preferentially in females and make up a sizeable subset of all IVLCL cases (up to 26% in one study of 38 patients), in which the only symptomatology is in the form of a skin rash or plaques, without other sites of involvement.27 Up to one-third of patients with cutaneous presentation may go on to develop other sites of involvement, such as the CNS (as was the case for our case 4), but these cases do not fall under the ‘cutaneous variant’ subset. In keeping with findings in the literature that the patients with cutaneous involvement have improved survival, case 4 in our series was disease-free at 22 months following their CNS relapse. Case 5 received their clinical treatment outside of our institution and clinical follow-up could not be assessed.

Some challenge the notion of IVLCL concomitantly involving the CNS extravascularly due to the fact that they are thought to have absent surface adhesion molecules CD29, CD54 (ICAM-1), and CD11a, preventing them from being able to cross small CNS vessels to form perivascular or extravascular infiltrates.28 However, a biologic explanation for the predilection for IVLCL to involve the CNS with an extravascular growth pattern could be due to the fact that as veno-occlusive events occur secondary to small vessel involvement by IVLCL, the permeability of the blood-brain-barrier is altered29 such that it allows for passive diffusion of neoplastic cells across vessels into the brain parenchyma to form extravascular infiltrates.

A diagnosis of IVLCL is made based on the clinical features and histologic findings of selective intravascular growth of large B cells. Clonal rearrangement of immunoglobulin chains is not required for the diagnosis. In fact, the sensitivity of PCR-based clonality assays is not very high in large B-cell lymphomas. In our small series, only one case was positive for clonal heavy chain gene rearrangement. Using a combination of heavy and light chain approach, we were able to expand molecular evidence of clonality in three of the five cases.

Thus, in cases when two different histologies coexist in the same patient, molecular modalities are useful to determine the clonal relationship between distinct growth-patterns. Here, we used a molecular approach to confirm that CNS-involvement with extravascular morphology was clonally identical to the intravascular component in the same patient. To our knowledge, this is the first study using conventional molecular diagnostic modalities to demonstrate that extravascular B cells in the CNS of a patient are clonally identical to systemic intravascular cells in the same patient with IVLCL. Rare past efforts have failed, as indeed, it is difficult to work with such scant material for molecular studies.19

In summary, of the two of five cases in this study with CNS involvement, both show pure perivascular and extravascular growth, which in combination with other reported cases in the literature, raises the possibility that CNS involvement is more frequently extravascular in IVLCL than currently appreciated. Therefore, it is the intent of this study to raise awareness that IVLCL is not just a clinically heterogenous entity but is also a histologically heterogenous entity with potential proclivity to form extravascular foci in the CNS due to biologically unique properties of the blood brain barrier. Further analysis is needed, particularly in the form of large retrospective cohort studies of known IVLCL patients, to pinpoint the frequency of extravascular morphology in the CNS in these patients.

Conflicts of Interest

No potential conflict of interest relevant to this article was reported.

REFERENCES


An Experimental Infarct Targeting the Internal Capsule: Histopathological and Ultrastructural Changes

Chang-Woo Han · Kyung-Hwa Lee · Myung Gian Noh · Jin-Myung Kim · Hyung-Seok Kim1 · Hyung-Sun Kim2 · Ra Gyung Kim2 · Jongwook Cho2 · Hyoung-Ihl Kim2 · Min-Cheol Lee

Departments of Pathology and Forensic Medicine, Chonnam National University Medical School and Research Institute of Medical Sciences, Gwangju; 1Department of Medical System Engineering and School of Mechatronics, Gwangju Institute of Science and Technology, Gwangju, Korea

Accepted: February 16, 2017

Revised: February 3, 2017

Received: September 24, 2016

Corresponding Author

Min-Cheol Lee, MD, PhD
Department of Pathology, Chonnam National University Medical School and Research Institute of Medical Sciences, 160 Baekseo-ro, Dong-gu, Gwangju 61469, Korea
Tel: +82-62-220-4303
Fax: +82-62-220-5697
E-mail: mclee@jnu.ac.kr

Background: Stroke involving the cerebral white matter (WM) has increased in prevalence, but most experimental studies have focused on ischemic injury of the gray matter. This study was performed to investigate the WM in a unique rat model of photothrombotic infarct targeting the posterior limb of internal capsule (PLIC), focusing on the identification of the most vulnerable structure in WM by ischemic injury, subsequent glial reaction to the injury, and the fundamental histopathologic feature causing different neurologic outcomes.

Methods: Light microscopy with immunohistochemical stains and electron microscopic examinations of the lesion were performed between 3 hours and 21 days post-ischemic injury. Results: Initial pathological change develops in myelinated axon, concomitantly with reactive change of astrocytes. The first pathology to present is nodular loosening to separate the myelin sheath with axonal wrinkling. Subsequent pathologies include rupture of the myelin sheath with extrusion of axonal organelles, progressive necrosis, oligodendrocyte degeneration and death, and reactive gliosis. Increase of glial fibrillary acidic protein (GFAP) immunoreactivity is an early event in the ischemic lesion. WM pathologies result in motor dysfunction. Motor function recovery after the infarct was correlated to the extent of PLIC injury proper rather than the infarct volume.

Conclusions: Pathologic changes indicate that the cerebral WM, independent of cortical neurons, is highly vulnerable to the effects of focal ischemia, among which myelin sheath is first damaged. Early increase of GFAP immunoreactivity indicates that astrocyte response initially begins with myelinated axonal injury, and supports the biologic role related to WM injury or plasticity. The reaction of astrocytes in the experimental model might be important for the study of pathogenesis and treatment of the WM stroke.

Key Words: Stroke; White matter; Models, animal; Pathology; Ultrastructure

As the human life span has continued to increase, stroke patterns have changed. Ischemic stroke, which constitutes 80%—85% of stroke cases, comprise both the gray matter (GM) and white matter (WM) of the brain. The prevalence of WM injury causing motor and intellectual dysfunction has increased with the aging population. Neuroimaging methods have shown rarefaction of the WM resulting from injury, which is termed leukoaraiosis. Ischemic stroke confined to WM, called ischemic leukoencephalopathy, is a feature of leukoaraiosis that can be observed in humans through neuroimaging. Currently, the most common etiology and pathogenesis of leukoaraiosis are undefined vascular or ischemic events.

Up to 25% of WM strokes cause lacunar change, and the internal capsule (IC) is commonly affected in humans. The posterior limb of the IC (PLIC) is the fundamental subcortical motor pathway; it includes the major corticofugal tract that is directly related to motor function. Infarction of the PLIC results in a challenging clinical progress characterized by persistent motor disability; therefore, studies on pathophysiological alterations and therapeutics are essential.

Animal models have been used to understand the pathophysiology of strokes and to guide the development of more effective therapeutic or rehabilitative interventions. Few studies have investigated WM injury when compared with studies on the effect of ischemia in the GM. This limitation is partly due to the difficulty in generating animal models of WM stroke. While the weight of human brain is 1,300 to 1,500 g, that of the rat brain is 5.5 to 6.0 g. Moreover, the substantially lower WM/GM ratio in rodents (approximately 14%:86%) compared with primates (40%:60%) increases the difficulty in targeting the WM
structure.12

A literature search through publications spanning the last 10 years revealed several experimental methods used to develop WM stroke models, including occlusion of the common carotid artery, proximal middle cerebral artery13 and anterior choroidal artery (AchA)14 and administration of the vasoconstrictive agent endothelin-1 (ET-1) into the subcortical WM, IC, and striatum.15-19 However, infarcts selectively targeting the IC and resulting in chronic motor impairment cannot be induced consistently. Long-term follow-up studies have failed to produce long-term, persistent motor deficits in the experimental models.19,20 The lack of rat models of WM stroke has several possible neuroanatomical reasons, including the much smaller WM area of rats compared with primates, the irregularly elongated IC structure, and the absence of efficient tools selectively targeting the IC.6,12 Therefore, accurately assessing and controlling the infarct location from the brain surface is difficult stereotactically.

To establish a WM infarct model producing long-term fore-limb and hind limb motor deficits, selective ischemic injury of the pyramidal tract is critical. Previously, we created a highly reproducible rat model of IC-specific stroke using a photothrombotic technique, which involves selectively illuminating the PLIC after intravenous injection of Rose Bengal solution.21,22 The infarct lesions occurred in the PLIC without any significant injury to surrounding structures including the putamen, optic nerve, and WM. Neurologic motor functions significantly decreased immediately after the ischemia and recovered variably. Through the investigation of the early and comprehensive histopathology and ultrastructural changes resulting from focal cerebral WM ischemia, the purpose of this study was to determine which structure of the WM is the first to be damaged, how glial response appears to the damage, and what is the most important factor causing different neurologic outcomes.

### MATERIALS AND METHODS

#### Experimental animals

Male Sprague-Dawley rats, 8- to 9-week-old and weighing 200–240 g, were housed two per cage in a controlled husbandry unit with a 12/12 hour light/dark cycle and permitted ad libitum access to food and water. The temperature was maintained at 21 ± 1°C. A total of 77 rats were used for the experimental study, and they were divided into three groups: 50 rats for light microscopic histological examination, 13 rats for electron microscopic examination, and 14 rats for measurement of infarct volume. The brain was harvested from 3 hours to 21 days after the photothrombotic ischemia and infarct volumes were measured at 14 days (Table 1). Animal experiments were performed according to the institutional guidelines of Chonnam National University Research Institute of Medical Science and Gwangju Institute of Science and Technology (GIST). All efforts were made to minimize animal suffering and to reduce the number of animals used. Institutional ethical committee approval was obtained prior to the experiments.

#### Induction of IC infarction and behavioral evaluation

The photothrombotic capsular infarction model used in this study was described previously.21 Experimental rats were divided into two groups: stroke lesion group (SLG) and sham-operated group (SOG). Briefly, experimental rats of SLG were anesthetized and fixed with a small animal stereotactic frame. A 28-gauge straight stainless steel needle implemented with a fine optical fiber transmitting laser light, a 125 μm outer diameter, and a 62.5 μm core diameter, was inserted through a midline scalp incision. The needle was stereotactically inserted into the PLIC target; 2.0 mm posterior, 3.1 mm lateral to midline, and 7.2 mm deep to bregma, as shown in Fig. 1. The coordinate used in this experiment was deeper than those previously suggested.16 Rose Bengal dye was injected through the tail vein, followed by 1.5 minutes of laser irradiation with an intensity of 2.5 mW at the fiber tip. After the scalp wound was secured, the
rat was transferred to a recovery chamber. The experimental rats of SOG underwent an identical lesion-making procedure except for receiving an injection of saline solution (0.2 mL/100 g) instead of Rose Bengal dye.

The behavioral tests employed were described in the previous study, and single pellet reaching tasks (SPRTs) were used to measure motor performance in this study. Briefly, an experimental apparatus was made of clear Plexiglas with a 1-cm wide slit in the middle of the front wall for the food shelf. Once rats began to show a forelimb preference to obtain a sucrose pellet (Bio-Serve, Frenchtown, NJ, USA) through the slit, a pellet was obliquely placed contralateral to the preferred paw to prevent the use of the nonpreferred paw. Animals were subsequently administered 20 pellets per session for 21 days. Successful reach was defined as a reach in which an animal grasped a food pellet, brought it into the cage, and consumed it without dropping. Reaching performance was scored and the success rate was calculated as the formula, number of successful reaches $\times \frac{100}{20}$ scores before the operation were averaged to represent preoperative reaching performance. After the phototrombotic infarct, the experimental rats were subdivided as follows from the SPRT score: early recovery group (ERG) characterized by $> 50\%$ recovery in 7 days; moderate recovery group (MRG) characterized by $> 50\%$ recovery of the prelesion status in 14 days; and poor recovery group (PRG) which had reaching performance at $< 50\%$ of the prelesion status. Subjects in the ERG were excluded from the study. Persistent motor impairment, characteristic of both MRG and PRG subjects, developed effectively in 71% of rats. SOG rats did not show a significant decrease in SPRT performance within the observation period.

Measurement of infarct size

To measure the infarct size in both MRG and PRG rats, seven fresh brains were perfused at 14 days after the ischemia. Coronal brain sections of 2.5-mm thickness were obtained from the center of the needle insertion sites using a metallic tissue plate covered with optimal cutting temperature (OCT) compound and immediately frozen at $-25^\circ$C in a frozen tissue microtome. Serial tissue slices from the frozen brains (20-µm thick sections at 200-µm intervals) were prepared and stained with hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) and cresyl violet. Histologic images were scanned with a ScanScope virtual microscope (Aperio Technologies, Vista, CA, USA). Images from five to six sections were assessed for infarct lesions with Image J software (NIH, Bethesda, MD, USA). The total volume of brain injury was determined by summing the area of damaged tissue recorded from all sections and multiplying by the distance between sections. The completeness of the IC destruction was determined by three of the authors, all of whom were blinded to the motor recovery group.

Histopathology and immunohistochemistry

Experimental time-points after PLIC ischemia were as follows. To assess early changes of PLIC infarct, $n = 2$ each at 3, 6, and 12 hours, and $n = 4$ each at 1, 4 and 7 days. To assess late changes between MRG and PRG infarcts, $n = 8$ each at 14 and 21 days. For SOG, $n = 2$ for each postlesion time-points. After the behavioral evaluation, rats were anesthetized with intraperitoneal sodium pentobarbital (70 mg/kg) and killed by intra-aortic perfusion of 1% paraformaldehyde in phosphate buffer solution (PBS; 0.12 M, pH 7.4) delivered by a perfusion pump (36 mL/min) for 5 minutes followed by 4% paraformaldehyde in PBS for 15 minutes at the same flow rate. The brains were then removed and coronally sectioned into 4-mm-thick slices surrounding the center of the needle insertion site. For light microscopy examinations, the brains were removed from the skull, postfixed in 4% paraformaldehyde for 2 days at room temperature, and subse-

Fig. 1. A 28-gauge needle with an optical fiber (A, inset) inserted stereotactically into the posterior limb of the internal capsule (B), 2.0 mm posterior, 3.1 mm lateral to midline, and 7.2 mm deep from bregma, to produce the infarction.
subsequently kept in processed paraffin-embedded tissue blocks. Routine H&E, luxol fast blue–periodic acid–Schiff (LBPAS), and immunohistochemical stainings were performed on tissue sections (6-µm-thick) on probed-glass slides. Immunohistochemical staining with anti–glial fibrillary acidic protein (GFAP; 1:400, polyclonal, Zymed, South San Francisco, CA, USA) and anti–neurofilament protein (NFP; 1:600, clone 2F11, Dako Cytomation, Carpinteria, CA, USA) was done using the avidin–biotin peroxidase method with the ABC kit (Vector Laboratories, Burlingame, CA, USA). Antigen retrieval was conducted by heating the tissue sections at 60°C for 5 minutes in sodium citrate buffer, after which the sections were incubated in a mixture of 3% hydrogen peroxide and 10% methanol for 20 minutes, followed by 10% goat serum for 1 hour at room temperature. The sections were incubated with each primary antibody for 2 hours, biotinylated secondary antibody for 20 minutes, and streptavidin-horseradish peroxidase (Dako Cytomation) for 20 minutes. They were then developed with a chromogenic solution of diaminobenzidine and counterstained with hematoxylin to visualize cell nuclei. Known positive and negative tissues were used as controls.

Electron microscopy

One rat each at 3, 6, and 12 hours, and two rats each at 1, 4, 7, 14, and 21 days after the ischemia (n = 13) and one SOG rat were studied by transthoracic cardiac perfusion. Rats were perfused with 1% paraformaldehyde/0.1% glutaraldehyde in cold phosphate buffer (PB) delivered by a perfusion pump (36 mL/min) for 5 minutes, followed by 2% paraformaldehyde/2% glutaraldehyde in cold PB at the same flow rate for 5 minutes. Brains were removed and coronally cut into 2-mm-thick slices. After the lesion was evaluated macroscopically in the brain slices, tissues were trimmed to approximately 2 × 2 × 1 mm, placed in 4% glutaraldehyde in PB for 24 hours at 4°C, postfixed in 2% osmium tetroxide for 2 hours at room temperature, rinsed in 0.1 mol/L cacodylate buffer, dehydrated in graded concentrations of ethanol followed by propylene oxide, incubated in a mixture of epon/propylene oxide (50/50, then 80/20 for 4 hours), and embedded in epon at 60°C in an oven for 2 days. Semi-thin sections (1-µm-thick) were stained with 1% toluidine blue and screened by light microscopy to select thin section areas from multiple blocks at each lesion time-point for electron microscopy. Selected thin sections (800-Å thick) were cut with a diamond knife on an ultramicrotome (LKB-Produkter, Bromma, Sweden), mounted on copper grids, contrasted with uranyl acetate and lead citrate, and viewed on a JEOL 120S electron microscope (Nihon Denshi, Tokyo, Japan). The investigators were initially blinded to the treatment conditions. Axon and myelin thicknesses were quantified from 3 hours to 21 days after ischemia. Two random fields per grid from two grids were analyzed per experimental brain. Four random images within each field were collected at ×5,000 magnification and analyzed with ImagePro Plus (MediaCybernetics, Rockville, MD, USA). The axon and myelin sheath diameters were determined for every myelinated axon from a minimum of 30 axons for each experimental group. The myelin thickness was calculated by subtracting the axon diameter from the total fiber diameter. The g-ratio of each myelinated axon was calculated by dividing the average axon diameter by the average total fiber diameter.

Statistical analysis

Data were analyzed with SPSS ver. 10.0 statistical analysis software (SPSS Inc., Chicago, IL, USA). SPRTs for skilled reaching performances were analyzed with a repeated measure analysis of variances for group and time. Electron microscopy data (g-ratio, axon caliber, and myelin thickness) were tested with a one-way ANOVA. Data are presented as the mean ± standard error of mean, with p < .05 considered significant.

RESULTS

Infarct volumes

A series of frozen tissue slices stained with cresyl violet to measure infarct volume is illustrated in Fig. 2A. Infarct volume included the area of necrosis and surrounding demyelination and astrogliosis. At 14 days after ischemia, the infarct volume was 0.6 ± 0.2 mm³ in the PRG and 0.5 ± 0.2 mm³ in the MRG (Fig. 2B). Infarcts in the PRG were slightly larger than those in the MRG; however, there was no significant relationship between infarct volume and the degree of motor recovery in each group.

Light microscopy findings

Myelinated axons in the PLIC were well defined by LBPAS and NFP immunohistochemical staining. The presence of reactive astrocytes was clearly indicated by GFAP immunohistochemical staining. At 3 hours post-ischemia, a pale focal lesion was observed on H&E stained preparation (Fig. 3A). The lesion boundary was not clear and gradually merged with the neighboring normal WM. The lesion was highlighted by light brown positivity on GFAP staining (Fig. 3B). Focal lesions of myelin pallor showed separated, swollen myelinated axons in edematous PLIC by LB-
PAS staining. Nuclear pyknosis of oligodendrocytes was identified in the lesion. Edematous change was noted in the upper portion of the optic tract and was limited to the vicinity of PLIC.

At 6 hours to 1 day poststroke, the focal lesion of PLIC was more clearly identifiable with time through low magnification microscopy. A focal infarct manifested as a well-demarcated, pale, whirish lesion due to the lack of staining with H&E and LBPAS (Fig. 3C, D). Immunohistochemical staining revealed increased positivity for GFAP (Fig. 3E) and decreased positivity for NFP (Fig. 3F). Immunopositivity for GFAP in the infarct lesion indicated the reactive change of astrocytes. No inflammatory cell infiltration in the infarct lesion was noted.

At 4 days post-ischemia, myelinated axons in the PLIC were completely lost by LBPAS staining (Fig. 3G). The lesion had a

![Image](https://example.com/image1)

**Fig. 2.** A series of frozen sections with Nissl staining to measure infarct volume, marked with red dotted line, are present (A). Graphic presentation of the volumes reveals no significant difference between the moderate recovery group (MRG) and poor recovery group (PRG) (B).

![Image](https://example.com/image2)

**Fig. 3.** Light microscopy findings of stroke involving the poster limb of the internal capsule (PLIC). Coronal sectioning reveals a poorly defined focal lesion characterized by loss of hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) staining (A) and increased glial fibrillary acidic protein (GFAP) staining (B) at 3 hours post-ischemia.

(Continued to the next page)
Fig. 3. (Continued from the previous page) A well-demarcated, pale, whitish lesion is identified by low magnification microscopy via H&E and luxol fast blue–periodic acid-Schiff (LBPAS) staining (C, D), and GFAP and neurofilament protein immunostaining (E, F) at 12 hours to 1 day post-ischemia.

(Continued to the next page)
Fig. 3. (Continued from the previous page) The focal lesion shows central necrosis surrounded by macrophages (G) phagocytized with myelinated axon debris (H) by LBPAS staining, and GFAP-positive hypertrophic astrocytes along the lesion periphery (I) at 4 days post-ischemia. The necrotic center is gradually reduced in volume, and infiltrating macrophages decrease in number at 7 days post-ischemia. However, macrophages persist, and phagocytize periodic acid-Schiff–positive myelin debris as shown through LBPAS staining (J). At 14 to 21 days post-ischemia, the infarct lesion presents as a pseudocystic cavity consisting of reactive astrocytes, macrophages, and newly formed capillaries. The motor recovery at 14 to 21 days post-ischemia is related to the completeness of axonal injury in the PLIC. In the moderate recovery group, LBPAS staining in the PLIC revealed a pseudocystic lesion surrounded by GFAP-positive reactive astrocytes (K), and partially preserved myelinated axons passing in the PLIC periphery (L). In the poor recovery group, myelinated axons in the PLIC were completely disrupted as shown by LBPAS staining (M) and were replaced by a cystic cavity surrounded by GFAP-positive reactive astrocytes (N).
central geographic necrosis surrounded by a wall of macrophages, in which each macrophage had a central nucleus with prominent nucleoli and abundant cytoplasm phagocytized with light-blue or reddish granular debris (Fig. 3H). Loss of NFP staining in the PLIC also indicated lesion developed. Neutrophil did not infiltrate in the lesion. Strong GFAP staining highlighted presence of hypertrophic astrocytes along the periphery of the infarct lesion and neighboring WM (Fig. 3I).

At 7 days post-ischemia, the necrotic center showed a decreased volume, and was surrounded by infiltrating macrophages, reactive hypertrophic astrocytes, and newly formed capillaries. Infiltrating macrophages actively phagocytized reddish granular debris throughout the infarct lesion, clearly shown by LBPAS staining (Fig. 3J). At 14 to 21 days post-ischemia, central necrosis was distinctly resolved and the lesion was a pseudocystic with loosely arranged cellular elements. The lesion consisted of a mixture of foamy macrophages, hypertrophic astrocytes with elongated processes, and newly formed capillaries. Critical histopathological features related to motor dysfunction differences between the MRG and PRG were investigated. A portion of myelinated axon bundles passing the PLIC was preserved, as illustrated by immunohistochemical stains for GFAP and NFP (Fig. 3K, L). However, the fiber tract of myelinated axons forming the PLIC was severely disrupted and formed pseudocysts in the PRG group, which was clearly identified by LBPAS staining at low magnification (Fig. 3M). In the interpretation of PLIC injury by light microscopy, careful examination of serial tissue sections is important. At 21 days post-ischemia, the focal infarct lesion persisted as a pseudocystic cavity. A few macrophages were still observed along the inner side of the angiogliotic cavity (Fig. 3N). Microscopic examinations confirmed the presence of PLIC lesions (Table 2). The optic tract adjacent to the IC was partially injured in a few rats. However, the adjacent striatum and anterior limb of the IC were intact. The SOG did not show any damage within the underlying IC.

**Ultrastructural findings**

Histopathological alterations resulting from early ischemic injury were further studied by electron microscopy (Table 2). In SOG, normal myelinated axons presented as a unit of a compact lamellar sheath closely encompassing an axon, and oligodendrocytes were surrounded by myelinated axons (Fig. 4A). Size measurement revealed two types of myelinated axons: large (0.85 ± 0.18 µm diameter) and small (0.41 ± 0.13 µm). Even large axons presented in groups or singular aligned intimately with small axons. Each axon was filled with organized intermediate filament structures; called neurofilaments, and mitochondria were...

---

**Table 2.** Histopathologic features of photothrombotic capsular infarct through the time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time (post-ischemia)</th>
<th>Light microscopy</th>
<th>Electron microscopy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3–12 hr</td>
<td>Focal lesion with blurred margin</td>
<td>Nodular swelling and loosening of compact myelin sheath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Myelin pallor by H&amp;E and LBPAS stain</td>
<td>Submyelin edema, interstitial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increased GFAP and decreased NFP immunoreactivity from lesion center</td>
<td>Mild wrinkling of axons, but intact neurofilaments and mitochondria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 day</td>
<td>Focal lesion on PLIC with well-defined margin</td>
<td>Reactive astrocytes with hypertrophic processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increased GFAP immunoreactivity in the lesion and surrounding white matter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Loss of NFP immunoreactivity and LBPAS stainability</td>
<td>Fibrin thrombosis and capillary luminal obstruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No inflammatory cell infiltration</td>
<td>Axonal swelling and flooding of organelles, extracellular edema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 days</td>
<td>Focal infarct with central necrotic cavity surrounded by macrophages engulfing myelin debris</td>
<td>Rupture of myelin sheath with subsequent demyelination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Loss of myelinated axons of PLIC</td>
<td>Reactive astrocytes with hypertrophic processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GFAP immunopositive hypertrophic astrocytes along the border of infarct and its vicinity</td>
<td>Degeneration and apoptosis of oligodendrocytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 days</td>
<td>Focal infarct with necrotic cavity surrounded by macrophages engulfing myelin debris, newly formed capillaries, and reactive astrocytosis</td>
<td>Markedly swollen axons with demyelination forming inflated ball or cystic appearance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Demyelinated axons</td>
<td>Marked extracellular edema with exudation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Macrophages phagocytized with myelin debris and dense bodies</td>
<td>Necrosis of cellular elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 days</td>
<td>Focal infarct with necrotic cavity containing macrophages, hypertrophic astrocytes and newly formed capillaris</td>
<td>Macrophages phagocytized with myelin debris and dense bodies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 days</td>
<td>Focal infarct with reduced necrotic cavity containing few macrophages and angiogliosis</td>
<td>Demyelinated axons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Astrogliosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Macrophages, markedly reduced phagocytic debris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Demyelinated axons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Astrogliosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Macrophages with phagocytic debris still present</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H&E, hematoxylin and eosin; LBPAS, luxol fast blue-periodic acid-Schiff; GFAP, glial fibrillary acidic protein; NFP, neurofilament protein; PLIC, posterior limb of internal capsule.
occasionally identified within axons. Progressive structural abnormalities in myelinated axons were observed within the ischemic lesion.

At 3 hours post-ischemia, platelets aggregated in the capillary lumen and exudative changes were present in interstitial spaces among myelinated axons. Nodular swelling with loosening of the myelin sheath and irregular wrinkling of axons was observed in both large and small myelinated fibers (Fig. 4B). Nodular loosening of the myelin sheath led to the formation of lamellar knob. With nodular loosening of myelin, a clear space developed in the submyelin area and contacted wrinkled axons with polygonal outlines. However, axonal integrity consisting of filamentous structures and mitochondria was relatively well preserved. Oligodendrocytes had relatively intact nuclei, rough endoplasmic reticulum (ER), and mitochondria. Myelin pallor observed by light microscopy in the early stage of the ischemic injury matched the ultrastructural edematous change in the myelin sheath, submyelin space, and wrinkled axons.

At 6 hours post-ischemia, whorled myelinated axons were formed by progressive loosening of the compact myelin lamellae.

**Fig. 4.** Ultrastructural findings during the early stage of stroke involving the poster limb of internal capsule (PLIC). In the control group, a myelinated axon unit in PLIC had a compact lamellar sheath closely encompassing an axon (A, ×6,000). Each axon was filled with intermediate filament structures, called neurofilaments, and mitochondria. The lesion group presents early pathologic changes; nodular swelling and loosening of the myelin sheath, empty cystic change of submyelin space, polygonal wrinkling of axons, and accentuated cleft along the nuclear membrane of an oligodendrocyte (B, ×3,000) at 3 hours post-ischemia. Progressive loosening of the myelin sheath covers crinkled axons developing characteristic laminating whorled appearance (C, ×10,000) at 6 hours post-ischemia. Axonal swelling with a reactive change of the glial cells presented at 12 hours to 1 day post-ischemia (D-G). Swollen axons full of mitochondria, vesicles, and granules surrounded by a compact myelin sheath appeared. Fibrin thrombosis in capillary lumen (asterisk), a ruptured myelin sheath with extrusion of axonal organelles (arrows), and cystic vacuoles in the vicinity of swollen axons presented (D, ×12,000). (Continued to the next page)
covered with wrinkled axons (Fig. 4C). Large and small axons identified in SOG rats did not distinct significantly in MRG and PRG groups due to irregular loosening of the myelin sheath and markedly swollen axons. Small hydropic vacuoles developed, and intermediate filaments dissolved in wrinkled axons. At 12 hours to 1 day post-ischemia, the capillary lumen was obliterated by fibrin thrombosis. Nodular loosening of the myelin sheath decreased markedly, and wrinkled axons changed to plump, swollen axons. Swollen axons were filled with many mitochondria, vesicles, and granules, and showed mildly increased electron density (Fig. 4D). With rupture of the myelin sheath, axonal organelles (mitochondria, neurofilaments, and vesicles) extruded. Large vacuoles formed by demyelination with axonal flooding were common. Expansion of the extracellular space containing edema fluid presented. Reactive astrocytes were identified by clubbed hypertrophic processes containing abundant intermediate filaments that intimately connected with swollen axons (Fig. 4E). Oligodendrocytes had variable pathologic features ranging from intact nuclei and mildly swollen ER in the cytoplasm to peripheral clumping of coarse chromatin along the nuclear membrane. Oligodendrocytes undergoing apoptosis in the ischemic lesion were identified by irreg-

Fig. 4. (Continued from the previous page) Club-shaped processes of reactive astrocytes (arrows) intimately contacted swollen axons and organelles drifted from injured myelinated axons (E, ×6,000). Degenerative changes in an oligodendrocyte appear as an isolated cell with nuclear cytoplasmic dissociation by an irregular cleft, vesicles, and swollen mitochondria in the cytoplasm, and nuclear chromatin condensation along the nuclear membrane (F, ×6,000). Note the different stages of myelinated axon injury; from swollen axons filled with electron-dense organelles surrounded by a loosely arranged, laminating myelin sheath to demyelinated ghost axons formed by cystic vacuoles containing sparsely granular or myeloid debris (G, ×6,000). A series of myelinated axonal injury, from loosening myelin sheath to macrophages infiltration phagocytized myelin and other cellular debris, was present at 4 days post-ischemia (H, ×6,000).
ular clumping of coarse nuclear chromatin at the periphery of the nucleus, detachment of the nuclear membrane, and an electrondense cytoplasm filled with swollen mitochondria and ER (Fig. 4F).

At 4 days post-ischemia, whorled myelinated axons were present though the pattern differed from those at 6 hours. The whorls were formed by swollen axons filled with cell organelles and electrondense fine filamentous materials covered with whorled lamellae of myelin sheaths (Fig. 4G). Demyelinated ghost axons packed with edematous flooding were common. Macrophages had phagocytized degenerated and demyelinated axons and electrondense bodies (Fig. 4H).

At 7 to 21 days post-ischemia, the exudative reaction subsided progressively. A number of unmyelinated or thinly myelinated axons were evident. Variously degenerated myelinated axons with an infiltration of scavenging macrophages were seen in the presence of hypertrophic astrocytes and oligodendrocytes. The ultrastructural features were compatible with a pseudocystic wall observed by light microscopy. The number of macrophages decreased with time, but hypertrophic astrocytes were still evident at 21 days post-ischemia.

Axon and myelin thickness was further separately assessed to identify their contributions to g-ratio changes. Axon diameter significantly decreased (p < .001) at 3 hours to 6 hours post-ischemia. However, myelin thickness (calculated by nerve fiber diameter minus axon diameter) remarkably increased (p < .001) at 3 to 6 hours, and then decreased at 24 hours post-ischemia. The increased axon diameter and decreased myelin thickness at 4 to 21 days post-ischemia contributed to an increased g-ratio in the experimental animals. G-ratios did not differ between sham subjects and the contralateral PLIC in the experimental group.

**DISCUSSION**

In this experiment, a focal lesion in the PLIC was successfully created by laser light with a low intensity light source (814 mW/mm²) and a light delivery needle (28-gauge). The light scattering capacity is 44 times higher in the GM than in WM, which might be a promising mechanism to induce a WM infarct in this study. This system created a focal infarct in the PLIC with a chronic loss of motor function, and minimized injury to the adjacent striatum and optic tract. Thus, unwanted neurological and behavioral manifestations did not occur during the experimental period. It was possible to study progressive histopathological changes in the ischemic infarct by light and electron microscopy.

The human cerebrum is composed of 40% GM and 60% WM, and WM damage causes clinically significant neurological diseases including stroke and vascular dementia. The main components of the WM; myelinated axons, astrocytes, and oligodendrocytes, were injured by photothrombotic ischemia and infarction. In this study, pathological features developed during the first 3-hour highlighted nodular loosening of the myelin sheaths with polygonal wrinkling or compression of the axons. The lesion might be caused by post-thrombotic edema of the WM, indicating that the myelin sheath is very vulnerable to ischemic injury. Concurrent decreases in axonal diameter and increases in myelin sheath thickness at 3 to 6 hours post-ischemia indicated that injury of the myelin sheath and axon were synchronized.

During the acute phase of ischemic injury, motor dysfunction developed through the damage to myelinated axons, observed by electron microscopy at first. Simultaneously, immediate reactive change of astrocytes, evidenced by increased GFAP immunopositivity in the lesion center, began to recover the damaged WM. Reactive astrocytes continuously presented at 21 days after the WM ischemia in this study. Traditionally, reactive astrogliosis were thought to be detrimental because they secreted inhibitory substrates and provided adverse mechanical barrier for the axonal and dendritic plasticity. However, there were recent studies that reactive astrocytes might provide endogenous mechanisms to protect the ischemic injury and facilitate neural regeneration by releasing many trophic factors. Experimental data of our on-going study, data not shown, proved by quantitative morphometric analysis that reactive astrocytes produce highly increased immunoreactivity for brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) and develop other cerebral lesion produce highly increased immunoreactivity for brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) and develop other cerebral lesion replacement and WM remyelination in WM stroke model of rats.

With the progression of injury to myelinated axons and oligodendrocytes, a focal cystic infarct lesion developed. Cystic infarct in WM were formed by swelling and rupture of myelinated axons, expansion of the extracellular space containing edema fluid, and subsequent loss of massively swollen cellular elements. Macrophages infiltrated the lesion at 4 days post-isch-
emic injury and phagocytized axon-myelin debris and fat globules. A number of cystic ghost axons also indicated simultaneous injury of axon and myelin sheath by ischemia. Infarct volumes did not differ between subjects in the MRG and PRG. Motor recovery in the two groups depended on the completeness of histopathological capsular injury induced by the ischemia. Subjects in the PRG had more complete thickness destruction of the fiber tract at the anterior PLIC, whereas those in the MRG had partial destruction of the IC in serial sections of the brain. The procedure was clinically well tolerated throughout the experimental period, which spanned from 3 hours to 21 days post-ischemia. These findings show that photothrombotic focal cerebral ischemia produce a highly reliable model of WM infarct in the PLIC.

The pathophysiological mechanisms of WM stroke were previously most comprehensively studied by ET-1 injection into rat brains.\textsuperscript{15-19} The histopathological features differed according to the first component (axon or myelin) injured and experimental methods used. ET-1 impeded regional cerebral blood flow without disintegrating the blood-brain barrier and led to myelin disruption. Axonal injury was evident prior to any clear changes in myelin in the rat model of ET-1 induced WM ischemia, which is a hallmark of WM stroke.\textsuperscript{15} Sozmen \textit{et al}.\textsuperscript{35} reported prominent neutrophilic infiltrations in the GM at 24 hours post-ischemia, whereas myelin sheaths appeared intact within the infarct. Strokes induced by ET-1 injection into the IC are characterized by a well-demarcated, focal, demyelinated lesion and necrosis after 14 days.\textsuperscript{16} In this study involving photothrombotic ischemia, concomitant axonal and myelin damage were observed by light and electron microscopy. Although ultrastructural features of whorled myelin formation and polygonal wrinkling of axons appeared simultaneously in this study, edematous change of the myelin sheath was the first pathologic feature by WM ischemia. The photothrombotic model of WM ischemia was not comparable to the ET-1 model, but the histopathological features are significantly similar to those of human WM stroke.

The inflammatory response following photothrombotic focal ischemia in the GM and WM is contested. A previous study reported prominent neutrophilic infiltrations in the GM at 24 to 48 hours post-ischemia, and cuffing of macrophages surrounding the central necrosis at 4 days post-ischemia.\textsuperscript{15,16} However, prominent macrophage infiltration without neutrophil infiltrations was present at 4 days post-ischemia. Even when the same amount of ET-1 was administered to rats, a prominent macrophage/microglia response without neutrophil recruitment in the striatum at 3 days\textsuperscript{13} and a proliferative inflammatory response of both neutrophil and mononuclear leukocytes at 1 day post–ET-1 injection have been reported.\textsuperscript{18} The difference in inflammatory cell types might be related to cytokines released from the damaged WM and GM and should be studied further. Astrocyte activation occurred early and appeared consecutively with myelin and axonal injury after photorthombotic ischemia. However, increased GFAP staining for astrocyte activation occurred later (7 to 14 days) than the early axonal damage in ET-1–induced subcortical/WM stroke models.\textsuperscript{15} In this experiment, increased GFAP staining indicated that the astrocyte response was limited to the PLIC lesion and appeared very early at 1 hour post-ischemia. The number of astrocytes did not change, and cell hypertrophy increased GFAP staining in the lesion. GFAP staining delineated the lesion site persistently during the experimental period. The GFAP-positive astrocyte response was similar to that in the photorthombotic and ET-1 induced WM strokes in rats. Increased the number of astrocytes with GFAP positivity also observed in the ET-1 mouse model.\textsuperscript{35} The AchA is a branch of the internal carotid artery,\textsuperscript{14} and intraluminal occlusion of the AchA in rats resulted in variable infarct size in the IC and hypothalamus.\textsuperscript{16} A study reported the comprehensive histopathology of IC lacunar infarcts by AchA occlusion in gyrencephalic brains of miniature pigs. The study defined the area of the ischemic lesion as the ischemic core (an irreversibly damaged area), peri-infarct area, and marginal zone.\textsuperscript{26} Light and electron microscopy of the AchA occlusion model showed progressive histopathology of edema, disrupted axonal alignment, and aberrant myelin sheaths at 24 hours post-ischemia. GFAP-positive astrocytes in the peri-infarct area from early stages, infiltrated macrophages that phagocytized myelin debris and swollen axons, and several organelles within fragile myelin sheaths were also observed at 1 week post-ischemia. The most important finding from the ultrastructural analysis was that axonal damage resulted in myelin sheath instability and subsequent demyelination. These findings corresponded with the early and late histopathological changes found in the photothrombotic capsular infarct model used in this study. Ischemia disturbs ion homoeostasis due to a loss of ATP, which results in Ca\textsuperscript{2+} overload in axons and glia. This process is accelerated by glutamate-mediated over-activation of ionotropic receptors. An initial pathology of axon and myelin swelling in WM ischemia is caused by excess glutamatergic activation of the α-amino-3-hydroxy-5-methyl-4-isoxazole propionic acid (AMPA) receptors in the axon, while excitotoxic activation of N-methyl-D-aspartate receptors is the initial event in GM ischemia.\textsuperscript{57} Ischemia has also
been shown to induce excitotoxic damage to oligodendrocytes and astrocytes through AMPA receptors. In conclusion, cerebral WM is highly vulnerable to the effects of focal ischemia, among which myelinated axon is damaged first. Early and persistent increase of GFAP immunopositivity in astrocytes might be important for investigating the molecular mechanism of WM infarcts as well as the endogenous or exogenous neuroprotective responses involved. Future studies will be focused on biologic interactive mechanisms among neurons, myelinated axons, astrocytes, oligodendrocytes, and vascular endothelial cells in the experimental model.

Conflicts of Interest

No potential conflict of interest relevant to this article was reported.

Acknowledgments

This study was supported by a grant (CRI 13072-3) of the CNUH-GIST.

REFERENCES

22. Kim HS, Park MS, Lee JK, Kim HJ, Park JT, Lee MC. Time point


Overexpression of POSTN in Tumor Stroma Is a Poor Prognostic Indicator of Colorectal Cancer

Hyeon Jeong Oh1,2 · Jeong Mo Bae1,3 · Xian-Yu Wen2 · Nam-Yun Cho2 · Jung Ho Kim1,2 · Gyeong Hoon Kang1,2

1Department of Pathology, Seoul National University College of Medicine, Seoul; 2Laboratory of Epigenetics, Cancer Research Institute, Seoul National University College of Medicine, Seoul; 3Department of Pathology, SMG-SNU Boramae Medical Center, Seoul, Korea

Received: October 11, 2016
Revised: November 30, 2016
Accepted: January 19, 2017

Corresponding Author
Gyeong Hoon Kang, MD
Department of Pathology, Seoul National University College of Medicine, 103 Daehak-ro, Jongno-gu, Seoul 03080, Korea
Tel: +82-2-740-8263
Fax: +82-2-765-5600
E-mail: ghkang@snu.ac.kr

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is the third most common cancer in the world, with nearly 1.4 million new cases diagnosed in 2012, and South Korea is one of the countries with the highest incidence of CRC.1 Although TNM staging of American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) is the most powerful and reliable tool for prediction of prognosis and therapeutic decision making in CRC patients, the clinical outcome of CRC patients may vary even within the same cancer stage. Despite curative surgery and adjuvant chemotherapy and/or radiation therapy, approximately 17% of stage II CRCs and 33% of stage III CRCs will have a disease recurrence following primary therapy.2 Identification of CRCs with a high risk of recurrence might give a chance of benefit from additional therapy. Many studies are trying to find factors that could more precisely stratify patients into different risk categories.

Recent studies find that tumor microenvironment and tumor-stroma interaction are critical in tumor behavior. In tumor microenvironment, cancer-associated fibroblasts have an important role in tumor-stroma interaction and could affect prognosis.3-5 However, there are no specific markers of cancer-associated fibroblasts that have been proven to be related with tumor prognosis. Periostin (POSTN) is a secreted extracellular matrix protein which is originally identified to be expressed in osteoblasts and osteoblast-derived cells. POSTN is normally expressed in not only collagen-rich fibrous connective tissues, including periosteum and periodontal ligament, but also fibroblasts of normal tissue, including stomach and colon.6 POSTN is also expressed in cancer-associated fibroblasts of breast, colon, lung, pancreas, and stomach cancer.7,8 POSTN binds integrins, including αvβ3, αvβ5, and α6β4, which leads to the activation of the Akt/protein kinase B and focal adhesion kinase signalling pathways.9-11 POSTN-activated signalling pathways promote angiogenesis, cellular survival, and resistance to hypoxia-induced cell death.12 POSTN is also involved in epithelial-mesenchymal transition of tumor.8 Recent studies show that POSTN is associated with tumor invasiveness and poor prognosis in...
several malignancies.15-17

In the present study, we analyzed 1,125 CRC cases for their expression status of POSTN using immunohistochemistry and correlated POSTN expression with molecular features of CRCs, including CpG island methylator phenotype (CIMP), microsatellite instability (MSI), and clinicopathological features of CRC, including survival of patients. We tried to identify whether POSTN expression in cancer-associated fibroblast can be a prognostic marker in CRC.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Tissue samples

A consecutive series of CRC cases were retrieved from the surgical files of the Department of Pathology, Seoul National University Hospital, Seoul, Korea. Among the patients who underwent surgical resection for primary CRC from 2004 to 2007, we excluded those with neo-adjuvant treatment, non-invasive cancers, familial adenomatous polyposis, multiple or recurrent tumors, and a history of other malignancy within 5 years. Demographic data and clinicopathological information were retrieved from electronic medical records. Two pathologists (J.M.B. and G.H.K.) reviewed hematoxylin and eosin–stained tissue slides for the degree of histologic differentiation which was categorized as well-moderate versus poor (>50% vs ≤50%, respectively). Staging was classified according to the sixth edition guidelines of the AJCC. Hematoxylin and eosin–stained slides were also reviewed for evaluation of tumor budding, which is defined to be present when five or more buddings are present at ×200 magnification. Status of tumor infiltrating lymphocytes was divided into high and low (≥8 at ×400 magnification and <8 at ×400 magnification, respectively). The study was approved by Institutional Ethics Committee of Seoul National University Hospital which waived the requirement to obtain informed consent (approval No. 1502-029-647).

Evaluation of POSTN expression

After reviewing the hematoxylin and eosin tissue slides, representative areas of the tumor invasive front were selected and marked. Two-millimeter-core tissues were harvested from individual paraffin-embedded colon cancer tissues and were arranged in a new recipient paraffin block using a trephine apparatus (Superbiochip Laboratories, Seoul, Korea). Immunohistochemical analysis was performed with commercially available antibody against POSTN (1:200, HPA012306, Sigma, St. Louis, MO, USA). Two pathologists (H.J.O. and J.M.B.) independently evaluated POSTN immunohistochemistry. POSTN expression in tumor stroma showed homogeneous staining intensity and the level of POSTN expression was graded as 0 (negative), 1 (weak), 2 (moderate), and 3 (strong) (Fig. 1). Then, grades 0–2 and 3 were categorized as POSTN-low and POSTN-high, respectively.

BRAF and KRAS mutation and microsatellite instability analysis

Through microscopic examination, representative tumor areas in each case were marked and microdissected. The dissected tissues were subject to incubation at 55°C with lysis buffer and proteinase K for 2 days. Allele specific polymerase chain reaction for BRAF codon 600 and direct sequencing of KRAS codons 12 and 13 were performed. The MSI status of each tumor tissue versus normal tissue was determined by five National Cancer Institute markers including BAT25, BAT26, D2S123, D5S346, and D17S250. High MSI status was defined as when tumor DNA had altered alleles compared to normal DNA in two or more markers. Low MSI status was defined as when tumor DNA had altered allele compared to normal DNA in one marker. Microsatellite stable was defined as when no altered allele was present in tumor DNA.

CIMP analysis

CIMP status was examined by MethyLight assay. Bisulfite-modified DNA was subject to MethyLight assay which was performed as previously described.18 Methylation statuses of eight CIMP-specific CpG islands (CAGNA1G, CDKN2A, CRABP1, IGF2, MLH1, NEUROG1, RUNX3, and SOCS1) were quantified. CIMP-high was defined as five or more markers methylated, and CIMP-low was defined as four or less markers methylated out of eight. CIMP-0 was defined as no methylated marker.

Statistical analysis

SAS software (ver. 9.4 for Microsoft Windows, SAS Institute Inc., Cary, NC, USA) was used for the statistical analysis in our cohort. To compare clinicopathologic characteristics to stromal POSTN expression, we performed Pearson’s chi-square test. The age of CRC group according to stromal POSTN expression was compared using Wilcoxon’s rank-sum test. For the survival analysis, 5-year cancer-specific survival (CSS) and 5-year progression-free survival (PFS) were calculated using the log-rank test with a Kaplan-Meier curve. Hazard ratios (HRs) were calculated using the Cox proportional hazard model. The assumption of the proportional hazards was verified by plotting the log(–log[S(t)])

https://doi.org/10.4132/jptm.2017.01.19
http://jpatholtm.org/
against the time of the study. In the modeling process, all variables that were associated with PFS with a $p < .10$ were entered into an initial model; these variables were subsequently reduced by backward elimination. All statistical tests were two-sided, and statistical significance was defined as $p < .05$.

**RESULTS**

**Patient characteristics**

In a total of 1,135 CRC patients, the median age at diagnosis was 62 years (range, 20 to 90 years). The male to female ratio was 1.49:1 (673 males and 452 females). Tumor location was proximal colon (proximal to splenic flexure) in 277 patients (24.6%), distal colon in 438 patients (38.9%), and rectum in 410 patients (36.4%). KRAS mutation and BRAF mutation were observed in 313 (27.8%) and 48 patients (4.3%), respectively. In microsatellite analysis, microsatellite stable, MSI-low, and MSI-high were observed in 964 (85.7%), 73 (6.5%), and 88 (7.8%) patients, respectively. In CIMP analysis, CIMP-0, CIMP-low, and CIMP-high were observed in 510 (45.3%), 553 (49.2%), and
62 (5.5%) patients, respectively. Median follow-up duration was 69.8 months (range, 0.3 to 150.2 months). Seven hundred seventy-nine patients received 5-fluorouracil (5-FU)-based adjuvant chemotherapy.

**Clinicopathological features of CRCs according to stromal POSTN expression**

Of 1,125 CRC cases, 33 (2.9%), 296 (26.3%), 492 (43.7%), and 304 (27.0%) patients showed stromal POSTN expression from grade 0 to 3, respectively. POSTN-low CRCs were 821 (73.0%) and POSTN-high CRCs were 304 (27.0%) (Table 1). CRCs with stromal POSTN-high expression were associated with proximal location (35.2% in POSTN-high group vs 20.7% in POSTN-low group, \( p < .001 \)), infiltrative growth pattern (44.7% vs 30.7%, \( p < .001 \)), advanced T, N, M category (\( p < .001 \)), frequent tumor budding (80.9% vs 68.2%, \( p < .001 \)) and luminal necrosis (94.4% vs 89.6%, \( p = .014 \)) compared with CRCs with stromal POSTN-low expression. In molecular aspect,

| Table 1. Clinicopathologic characteristics of colorectal cancers according to the stromal POSTN expression |
|----------------------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| Variable                        | POSTN-low (\( n = 821, 73.0\% \)) | POSTN-high (\( n = 304, 27.0\% \)) | \( p \)-value |
| Age (yr)                        | 62 (20–87)       | 62 (29–90)       | .932            |
| Sex                             | Male             | Female           | .225            |
| Location                        | Proximal         | Distal           | <.001           |
| Growth pattern                  | Fungating        | Infiltrative     | <.001           |
| T category                      | T1,2             | T3,4             | <.001           |
| N category                      | N0               | N1,2             | <.001           |
| M category                      | 0                | 1                | <.001           |
| Stage                           | I, II            | III, IV          | <.001           |
| Differentiation                 | Differentiated   | Undifferentiated | .001            |
| Tumor budding                   | Absent           | Present          | <.001           |
| Dirty necrosis                  | Absent           | Present          | .014            |
| Crohn-like reaction             | Absent           | Present          | .204            |
| Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes   | High (> 8/HPF)   | Low (< 8/HPF)    | .211            |
| Serration                       | Absent           | Present          | .155            |
| Mucin production                | Absent           | Present          | .525            |
| CIMP                            | CIMP-0           | CIMP-low         | .030            |
| MSI                             | MSS              | MSI-low          | .959            |
| MSI-high                         | 54 (6.6)         | 19 (6.2)         |                |
| KRAS mutation                   | Wild type        | Mutant           | .158            |
| BRAF mutation (\( n = 1,124 \)) | Wild type        | Mutant           | .046            |

Values are presented as median (range) or number (%).

POSTN, periostin; HPF, high-power field; CIMP, CpG island methylator phenotype; MSI, microsatellite instability.
CRCs with stromal POSTN-high expression showed higher frequency of CIMP-high (7.9% vs 4.6%, \( p = .030 \)) and \( \text{BRAF} \) mutation (6.3% vs 3.5%, \( p = .046 \)) compared with CRGs with stromal POSTN-low expression. However, the frequency of MSI-high and \( \text{KRAS} \) mutation were not statistically associated with stromal POSTN expression.

**Prognostic implication of stromal POSTN expression in CRCs**

When we performed univariate survival analysis, CRCs with stromal POSTN-high expression showed worse 5-year PFS (HR, 1.80; 95% CI, 1.47 to 2.20; \( p < .001 \)) (Fig. 2A) and worse 5-year CSS (HR, 2.00; 95% CI, 1.52 to 2.63; \( p < .001 \)) (Fig. 2B) compared with CRGs with stromal POSTN-low expression. In multivariate survival analysis, stromal POSTN-high expression was an independent prognostic indicator of poor 5-year CSS (HR, 1.50; 95% CI, 1.13 to 2.00; \( p = .006 \)) (Table 2) and poor 5-year PFS (HR, 1.38; 95% CI, 1.12 to 1.70; \( p = .003 \)) (Table 3).

![Prognostic implication of stromal POSTN expression in CRCs](image)

**Fig. 2.** Kaplan-Meier survival curves according to the stromal periostin (POSTN) expression. (A) Five-year cancer-specific survival. (B) Five-year progression-free survival.

| Table 2. Univariate and multivariate analysis with respect to 5-year cancer-specific survival |
|----------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| **Variable**                      | **Univariate**  | **Multivariate** |
|                                  | **HR**          | **p-value**     | **HR**          | **p-value**     |
| Gross (infiltrative/fungating)    | 1.87 (1.32–2.66)| \(< .001\)      | 1.64 (1.24–2.18)| \(.001\)       |
| Stage (III, IV/I, II)             | 4.52 (3.26–6.26)| \(< .001\)      | 6.30 (4.27–9.29)| \(< .001\)     |
| Differentiation (PD/WD, MD)       | 3.41 (2.05–5.67)| \(< .001\)      | 2.15 (1.27–3.62)| \(.013\)       |
| \( \text{BRAF} \) (mutant/wild type) | 1.92 (1.15–3.19)| \(.012\)        | 1.92 (1.11–3.34)| \(.041\)       |
| Chemotherapy (treated/not-treated)| 0.94 (0.71–1.25)| \(.655\)        | 0.38 (0.28–0.52)| \(< .001\)     |
| POSTN (high/low)                  | 2.00 (1.52–2.64)| \(< .001\)      | 1.50 (1.13–2.00)| \(.006\)       |
| Tumor location (right/left)       | 1.56 (1.19–2.06)| \(.002\)        | 1.46 (1.09–1.96)| \(.011\)       |
| Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (high/low) | 0.69 (0.49–0.97)| \(.032\)       | -               | \(.51\)        |
| Budding (present/absent)          | 1.90 (1.36–2.66)| \(< .001\)      | -               | \(.129\)       |
| Crohn-like reaction (present/absent) | 0.71 (0.48–1.08)| \(.096\)       | -               | \(.305\)       |
| Age (\(\geq 65\) yr/<65 yr)       | 1.49 (1.15–1.93)| \(.003\)        | -               | \(.053\)       |
| CIMP (CIMP-H/CIMP-0, L)            | 1.91 (1.21–3.02)| \(.006\)        | -               | \(.632\)       |
| Sex (male/female)                 | 1.04 (0.80–1.36)| \(.762\)        | -               | -              |
| Necrosis (present/absent)         | 1.11 (0.70–1.78)| \(.652\)        | -               | -              |
| Serration (present/absent)        | 1.42 (0.80–2.54)| \(.235\)        | -               | -              |
| Mucin (present/absent)            | 1.32 (0.92–1.90)| \(.136\)        | -               | -              |
| MSI (MSI-H/MSS, MSI-L)             | 0.82 (0.48–1.41)| \(.476\)        | -               | -              |
| \( \text{KRAS} \) (mutant/wild type) | 1.12 (0.84–1.49)| \(.440\)       | -               | -              |

HR, hazard ratio; PD, poorly differentiated; WD, well differentiated; MD, moderately differentiated; POSTN, periostin; CIMP, CpG island methylator phenotype; CIMP-H, CIMP-high; CIMP-L, CIMP-low; MSI, microsatellite instability; MSI-H, MSI-high; MSS, microsatellite stable; MSI-L, MSI-low.
Recent studies show POSTN is overexpressed in cancer stroma of various malignancies, including colorectal, breast, lung, pancreatic, ovarian, gastric, head and neck, thyroid and prostate cancer as well as in glioblastoma. POSTN is thought to play important roles in tumorigenesis, such as invasiveness, metastasis, angiogenesis, lymphangiogenesis, and chemoresistance. In this study, we found that POSTN is overexpressed in 304 (27.0%) out of 1,125 cases, which is consistent with the results of other studies in several malignancies. Our study demonstrated that high POSTN expression is correlated with several aggressive clinicopathological features of CRCs. First, stromal POSTN expression was higher in CRCs of infiltrative growth pattern than CRCs of fungating growth pattern, which implies that POSTN is involved in infiltrative growth of tumor. Second, POSTN expression was associated with T, N, or M category. These results suggest that POSTN might participate in tumor progression and nodal or distant metastasis, which is consistent with the results of a recent study that POSTN expression is higher in distant metastatic lesion than in matched primary colorectal lesion. Cell line studies demonstrated that POSTN induces invasive activity and bestows a metastatic potential to HEK 293T cells which are tumorigenic but nonmetastatic. These results support the idea that POSTN might contribute to metastasis of tumor cells. Third, high tumor budding status was correlated with high POSTN expression. Several studies addressed that tumor budding should be regarded as a biomarker of poor prognosis, correlated with epithelial mesenchymal transition. A cell line study has demonstrated that stable transfection of POSTN induced epithelial-mesenchymal transition and increased invasive activity in HEK 293T cells. However, our present study has several limitations. First, this study is a retrospective study in a single institution. Second, stromal POSTN expression was evaluated in tissue microarray.

In our study, stromal POSTN expression was associated with CIMP-high and BRAF mutation. Because CIMP-high and BRAF mutation are hallmarks of molecular alterations in serrated neoplasia pathway, we can presume that stromal POSTN overexpression is associated with serrated neoplasia pathway. In a study by De Sousa et al., CCS3 subtype, which is related with serrated neoplasia pathway, showed overexpression of genes associated with epithelial mesenchymal transition and matrix remodeling. Recently, Fessler et al. demonstrated the induction of a mesenchymal phenotype upon transforming growth factor β treatment in a genetically engineered organoid culture carrying BRAF V600E mutation. In serrated neoplasia pathway, three molecular groups are known to be involved. One is BRAF-mutant/CIMP-high/ MSI-high subgroup, another is BRAF-mutant/CIMP-high/microsatellite stable (MSS) subgroup, and

### Table 3. Univariate and multivariate analysis with respect to 5-year progression-free survival

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Univariate</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>Multivariate</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HR (95% CI)</td>
<td>p-value</td>
<td></td>
<td>HR (95% CI)</td>
<td>p-value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gross (infiltrative/fungating)</td>
<td>1.96 (1.61–2.39)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.43 (1.17–1.75)</td>
<td>.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage (III, IV, I, II)</td>
<td>4.72 (3.71–6.02)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.75 (3.63–6.23)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Differentiation (PD/WD, MD)</td>
<td>3.32 (2.28–4.85)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.85 (1.26–2.71)</td>
<td>.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRAF (mutant/wild type)</td>
<td>1.61 (1.06–2.45)</td>
<td>.027</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.72 (1.12–2.63)</td>
<td>.013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemotherapy (treated/not-treated)</td>
<td>1.40 (1.11–1.76)</td>
<td>.004</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.59 (0.46–0.76)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POSTN (high/low)</td>
<td>1.80 (1.47–2.20)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.40 (1.08–1.83)</td>
<td>.012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Budding (present/absent)</td>
<td>2.15 (1.66–2.79)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.51 (1.15–1.97)</td>
<td>.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crohn-like reaction (present/absent)</td>
<td>0.72 (0.53–0.98)</td>
<td>.034</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>.302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (high/low)</td>
<td>0.70 (0.55–0.89)</td>
<td>.004</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>.089</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor location (right/left)</td>
<td>1.22 (0.98–1.51)</td>
<td>.080</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>.773</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age (≥ 6 yr/≤ 65 yr)</td>
<td>1.22 (1.00–1.49)</td>
<td>.046</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>.098</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CIMP (CIMP-H/CIMP-O, L)</td>
<td>1.44 (0.98–2.12)</td>
<td>.061</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>.277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sex (male/female)</td>
<td>0.94 (0.77–1.14)</td>
<td>.514</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Necrosis (present/absent)</td>
<td>1.14 (0.80–1.62)</td>
<td>.463</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serration (present/absent)</td>
<td>1.32 (0.83–2.08)</td>
<td>.244</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucin (present/absent)</td>
<td>1.12 (0.84–1.50)</td>
<td>.448</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSI (MSI-H/MSS, MSI-L)</td>
<td>0.80 (0.54–1.20)</td>
<td>.285</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KRAS (mutant/wild type)</td>
<td>1.05 (0.85–1.31)</td>
<td>.633</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HR, hazard ratio; CI, confidence interval; PD, poorly differentiated; WD, well differentiated; MD, moderately differentiated; POSTN, periostin; CIMP, CpG island methylator phenotype; CIMP-H, CIMP-high; MSI, microsatellite instability; MSI-H, MSI-high; MSS, microsatellite stable; MSI-L, MSI-low.

**DISCUSSION**

Recent studies show POSTN is overexpressed in cancer stroma of various malignancies, including colorectal, breast, lung, pancreatic, ovarian, gastric, head and neck, thyroid and prostate cancer as well as in glioblastoma. POSTN is thought to play important roles in tumorigenesis, such as invasiveness, metastasis, angiogenesis, lymphangiogenesis, and chemoresistance. In this study, we found that POSTN is overexpressed in 304 (27.0%) out of 1,125 cases, which is consistent with the results of other studies in several malignancies. Our study demonstrated that high POSTN expression is correlated with several aggressive clinicopathological features of CRCs. First, stromal POSTN expression was higher in CRCs of infiltrative growth pattern than CRCs of fungating growth pattern, which implies that POSTN is involved in infiltrative growth of tumor. Second, POSTN expression was associated with T, N, or M category. These results suggest that POSTN might participate in tumor progression and nodal or distant metastasis, which is consistent with the results of a recent study that POSTN expression is higher in distant metastatic lesion than in matched primary colorectal lesion. Cell line studies demonstrated that POSTN induces invasive activity and bestows a metastatic potential to HEK 293T cells which are tumorigenic but nonmetastatic. These results support the idea that POSTN might contribute to metastasis of tumor cells. Third, high tumor budding status was correlated with high POSTN expression. Several studies addressed that tumor budding should be regarded as a biomarker of poor prognosis, correlated with epithelial mesenchymal transition. A cell line study has demonstrated that stable transfection of POSTN induced epithelial-mesenchymal transition and increased invasive activity in HEK 293T cells. However, our present study has several limitations. First, this study is a retrospective study in a single institution. Second, stromal POSTN expression was evaluated in tissue microarray.

In our study, stromal POSTN expression was associated with CIMP-high and BRAF mutation. Because CIMP-high and BRAF mutation are hallmarks of molecular alterations in serrated neoplasia pathway, we can presume that stromal POSTN overexpression is associated with serrated neoplasia pathway. In a study by De Sousa et al., CCS3 subtype, which is related with serrated neoplasia pathway, showed overexpression of genes associated with epithelial mesenchymal transition and matrix remodeling. Recently, Fessler et al. demonstrated the induction of a mesenchymal phenotype upon transforming growth factor β treatment in a genetically engineered organoid culture carrying BRAF V600E mutation. In serrated neoplasia pathway, three molecular groups are known to be involved. One is BRAF-mutant/CIMP-high/ MSI-high subgroup, another is BRAF-mutant/CIMP-high/microsatellite stable (MSS) subgroup, and
the other is KRAS-mutant/CIMP-low/MSS subgroup.31,32 In this study, stromal POSTN overexpression was related with BRAF-mutant/CIMP-high/MSS subgroup (data not shown). Moreover, some clinicopathological features associated with CIMP, such as right colon preponderance, poor differentiation, high rates of tumor budding, frequent lymphatic, vascular, or perineural invasion and nodal metastasis, were more frequently observed in POSTN-high colon cancer compared with POSTN-low colon cancer. Further molecular test is needed to elucidate the relation between high POSTN stromal expression and serrated neoplasia pathway.

An accumulating series of study results indicate that cancer-associated fibroblasts contribute to chemo-resistance and poor patient survival.13,17-28 According to Xu et al., medium to high stromal POSTN expression was an independent predictor of poor disease-free survival and disease-specific survival. They also presented the association of chemo-resistance and stromal POSTN expression in stage II CRCs and stage III CRCs with chemotherapy history. In in vitro study, SW480 and HT29 cells cultured in stromal POSTN-enriched media showed chemoresistance to 5-FU. Recombinant POSTN increased proliferation and phosphorylation of Akt in SW480 and HT29 cells. Furthermore, the proliferation and phosphorylation of Akt were inhibited by phosphoinositide 3-kinase inhibitor LY294002.17,24 In our present study, stromal POSTN-high expression was an independent prognostic indicator of poor 5-year CSS and 5-year PFS. However, we could not confirm the chemo-resistance effect of stromal POSTN expression in our cohort (data not shown).

In conclusion, our findings suggest that immunohistochemical evaluation of stromal POSTN expression could be utilized for the identification of a subset of CRCs with poor prognosis. To determine whether stromal POSTN expression status is a prognostic marker of CRC, further studies are needed to validate this finding with an independent series of large-scaled CRC cases.

Conflicts of Interest

No potential conflict of interest relevant to this article was reported.

REFERENCES


Comparison of Unsatisfactory Samples from Conventional Smear versus Liquid-Based Cytology in Uterine Cervical Cancer Screening Test

Hoiseon Jeong · Sung Ran Hong · Seoung-Wan Chae · So-Young Jin · Hye Kyoung Yoon · Juhee Lee · Eun Kyung Kim · Sook Tai Ha · Sung Nam Kim · Eun-Jung Park · Jong Jae Jung · Sun Hee Sung · Sung-Chul Lim

Department of Pathology, Korea University Ansan Hospital, Korea University College of Medicine, Seoul; Department of Pathology, Cheil General Hospital and Women’s Health Care Center, Dankook University College of Medicine, Seoul; Department of Pathology, Kangbuk Samsung Hospital, Sungkyunkwan University School of Medicine, Seoul; Department of Pathology, Soonchunhyang University Hospital, Soonchunhyang University College of Medicine, Seoul; Department of Pathology, Inje University Busan Paik Hospital, Inje University College of Medicine, Busan; Department of Pathology, Kyung Hee University School of Medicine, Seoul; Department of Pathology, Eulji General Hospital, Seoul; Department of Pathology, Kyung Hee University School of Medicine, Seoul; T&C Diagnostic Pathology Clinic, Seoul; Samkwang Medical Laboratories, Seoul; Foryou Pathology Laboratories, Gwangju; Department of Pathology, Ewha Womans University Mokdong Hospital, Ewha Womans University School of Medicine, Seoul; Department of Pathology, Chosun University School of Medicine, Gwangju, Korea

Received: December 22, 2016
Revised: March 9, 2017
Accepted: March 14, 2017

Corresponding Author
Sung-Chul Lim, MD, PhD
Department of Pathology, Chosun University School of Medicine, 309 Pilmun-daro, Dong-gu, Gwangju 61452, Korea
Tel: +82-62-230-6343
Fax: +82-62-228-5860
E-mail: sclim@chosun.ac.kr

*This study was presented at the 29th Annual Spring Meeting of the Korean Society for Cytopathologists, 2015 and the International Academy of Cytology 2016 at Yokohama.

Background: Cervical cytology for uterine cervical cancer screening has transitioned from conventional smear (CS) to liquid-based cytology (LBC), which has many advantages. The aim of this study was to compare the proportion of unsatisfactory specimens from CS versus LBC at multiple institutions including general hospitals and commercial laboratories. Methods: Each participating institution provided a minimum of 500 Papanicolaou (Pap) test results for analysis. Pap tests were classified according to the participating institution (commercial laboratory or general hospital) and the processing method (CS, ThinPrep, SurePath, or CellPrep). The causes of unsatisfactory results were classified as technical problems, scant cellularity, or complete obscuring factors. Results: A total of 38,956 Pap test results from eight general hospitals and three commercial laboratories were analyzed. The mean unsatisfactory rate of LBC was significantly lower than that of CS (1.26% and 3.31%, p = .018). In the LBC method, samples from general hospitals had lower unsatisfactory rates than those from commercial laboratories (0.65% vs 2.89%, p = .006). The reasons for unsatisfactory results were classified as technical problems, scant cellularity, or complete obscuring factors. Conclusions: Unsatisfactory rate of cervical cancer screening test results varies according to the institution and the processing method. LBC has a significantly lower unsatisfactory rate than CS.

Key Words: Papanicolaou test; Cervical cytology; Unsatisfactory; Liquid-based cytology; Conventional smear
Cervical cytology, known as Papanicolaou (Pap) test, was first introduced in Korea in the late 1950s and has since played an important role in the early detection of uterine cervical cancer. Conventional smear (CS) is widely used for uterine cancer screening owing to its low cost and easy application. Liquid-based cytology (LBC) was developed in the early 2000s and has recently been increasingly used in Korea. Several LBC systems are commercially available in Korea, such as ThinPrep (Cytyc Corp., Boxborough, MA, USA), BD SurePath (BD Diagnostics, Burlington, NC, USA), and CellPrep (Biodyne, Seongnam, Korea).

In LBC, the sample is prepared by rinsing the sampling tool in liquid-based medium to make a cell suspension. The cell suspension is then used to prepare a slide with an evenly-distributed monolayer sheet of cells. LBC is being marketed on the basis of its advantages, such as low unsatisfactory rates, increased sensitivity in detecting cervical precancerous lesions, standardized and automated preparations, fast screening, availability of ancillary tests including a human papillomavirus DNA test, and facilitation of computer-assisted screening.

A number of studies have compared the performance of LBC versus CS; however, the results have been conflicting. Some meta-analyses report that LBC has lower unsatisfactory rates and better performance in terms of sensitivity, specificity, and overall accuracy compared with CS. Other studies report no evidence that LBC reduces unsatisfactory rates or detects high-grade lesions more accurately compared with CS. An independent review also showed no significant difference between the two methods.

Both CS and LBC are approved in Korea by the national cancer screening program as screening tests for uterine cervical cancer. However, there have been limited data verifying the use of LBC in Korea, and no studies comparing the unsatisfactory rates of LBC versus that of CS in the country. To evaluate and compare the unsatisfactory rates or detects high-grade lesions more accurately compared with CS, an independent review also showed no significant difference between the two methods.

RESULTS

We analyzed a total of 38,956 Pap test results from eight general hospitals (32,890 cases, 84.4%) and three commercial laboratories (6,066 cases, 15.6%). Total Pap test consisted of 15,872 (general hospital, 13,299; commercial laboratory, 2,573)

Table 1. Categorization of unsatisfactory samples according to the cause

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Technical problems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patch cellularity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halo effect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thick preparation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scant cellularity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scant cells in a clean background</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scant cells in a bloody background</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scant cells in a background of gel/inflammation/bacteria/mucus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obscuring factors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflammation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacteria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MATERIALS AND METHODS

This study spanned a 6-month period from July 2014 to January 2015. Each participating institution provided a minimum of 500 Pap test results for analysis. The Pap tests were classified according to the participating institution (commercial laboratory or general hospital) and by the processing method (CS, ThinPrep, SurePath, or CellPrep). The specimens were evaluated by cytopathologists at each given institution during their routine screening work. When an unsatisfactory result was found, the cause was evaluated using a checklist. Unsatisfactory slides were then reviewed and confirmed by cytopathologists.

The causes of unsatisfactory results were classified as either technical problems, scant cellularity, or complete obscuring factors, and subdivided as shown in Table 1. Technical problems referred to cases of patchy cellularity, a halo effect, and/or thick preparations in which obscuring factors such as blood, bacteria, mucus, gel, and inflammation were not present. Patchy cellularity referred to cases in which clear spaces formed on a slide owing to irregular loss of cells. A halo effect referred to cases in which a rim of cells formed on the periphery of a slide, leaving an empty space in the center. Thick preparation referred to cases in which the cellular details were obscured in > 75% of the slide because of aggregation of squamous epithelial cells. The Bethesda 2001 criteria were applied to evaluate cellularity. Regardless of the processing method, adequate sample was defined as an estimated minimum of 5,000 well-preserved and well-visualized squamous epithelial cells. Cases in which > 75% of the cells were obscured were classified as unsatisfactory, with the exception of cases with any abnormal cells.

Statistical analysis was performed with the SPSS statistical software package ver. 16.0 (SPSS Inc., Chicago, IL, USA), by using paired t tests and analysis of variance (ANOVA). Significance was defined as p < .05.
cases of CS (40.7%) and 23,084 (general hospital, 19,591; commercial laboratory, 3,493) cases of LBC (59.3%). LBC consisted of 5,309 cases of ThinPrep (23.0%), 15,868 cases of SurePath (68.7%), and 1,907 cases of CellPrep (8.3%) (Table 2). Each institution used CS in parallel with one type of LBC, with the exception of one general hospital that did not provide any CS data. The participating institutions provided data on the number of unsatisfactory samples and the total numbers of CS and LBC samples in the 6-month period. Unsatisfactory rates were calculated from the data and are shown in Table 3. The unsatisfactory rate of CS had a wide range of distribution from 0.1% to 11.2%, whereas that of LBC was between 0.0% and 4.4%. The mean unsatisfactory rates for CS and LBC were 3.31% and 1.26%, respectively (Table 4), showing that LBC had a significantly lower unsatisfactory rate than CS (p = .017).

The unsatisfactory rates were then analyzed according to the participating institution: either commercial laboratory or general hospital (Table 4). In commercial laboratories, the unsatisfactory rates of CS ranged from 2.91% to 11.16% (mean, 6.04%), whereas those of LBC ranged from 0.0% to 4.4% (mean, 0.65%). Regardless of the processing method, the general hospital group had a significantly lower unsatisfactory rate than the commercial laboratory group (p = .006).

For the preparation of LBC, six institutions used ThinPrep, three used SurePath, and two used CellPrep. The unsatisfactory rates were analyzed according to the three LBC products used. The unsatisfactory rate for ThinPrep, which was used in most institutions, ranged from 0.1% to 4.4%, with a mean rate of 1.6%. The unsatisfactory rate for SurePath ranged from 0.0% to 0.8%, with a mean rate of 0.3%. Between the two institutions that used CellPrep, one reported an unsatisfactory rate of 1.6% whereas the other reported 1.8%; the mean unsatisfactory rate of CellPrep was 1.7%. Although SurePath (0.3%) had a lower mean unsatisfactory rate than ThinPrep (1.6%) or CellPrep (1.7%), ANOVA revealed no statistically significant difference among the three groups.

The causes of unsatisfactory results were heterogeneous in CS (Table 5). The most common reason was scant cellularity on a clean background, which was observed in 90 out of 287 unsatisfactory cases of CS (31.4%). The second most common reason was obscuring due to inflammation (84 cases, 29.3%). A considerable proportion of unsatisfactory cases showed scant cellularity on a background of gel/inflammation/blood/mucus (GIBM; 32 cases). Inflammation was the most common obscuring factor, occurring in 84 cases; while the other factors (blood, bacteria, gel, and mucus) occurred in a minority of cases. Within the cat-

---

**Table 2. Composition of the samples**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>General hospital</th>
<th>Commercial laboratory</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Liquid-based cytology</td>
<td>19,591</td>
<td>3,493</td>
<td>23,084</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conventional smear</td>
<td>13,299</td>
<td>2,573</td>
<td>15,872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>32,890 (84.4)</td>
<td>6,066 (15.6)</td>
<td>38,856 (100)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Values are presented as number (%).  

**Table 3. Unsatisfactory rate (%) of each participating institution**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SurePath</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>148/23,084</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LBC</td>
<td>0/500</td>
<td>22/2,856</td>
<td>9/500</td>
<td>9/509</td>
<td>1/1,457</td>
<td>1/384</td>
<td>1/12,512</td>
<td>5/843</td>
<td>55/1,258</td>
<td>22/828</td>
<td>23/1,407</td>
<td>148/23,084</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SurePath</td>
<td></td>
<td>(0.0)</td>
<td>(0.8)</td>
<td>(1.8)</td>
<td>(1.7)</td>
<td>(0.1)</td>
<td>(0.3)</td>
<td>(0.0)</td>
<td>(0.6)</td>
<td>(4.4)</td>
<td>(2.7)</td>
<td>(1.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CellPrep</td>
<td></td>
<td>(1.8)</td>
<td>(26/500)</td>
<td>(23/658)</td>
<td>(19/2,975)</td>
<td>(16/4,670)</td>
<td>(4/2,810)</td>
<td>(77/1,690)</td>
<td>(24/826)</td>
<td>(43/1,057)</td>
<td>(287/15,872)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SurePath</td>
<td></td>
<td>(4.4)</td>
<td>(3.5)</td>
<td>(3.5)</td>
<td>(3.0)</td>
<td>(0.1)</td>
<td>(1.1)</td>
<td>(2.9)</td>
<td>(4.1)</td>
<td>(1.8)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Values are presented as number (%).  

LBC, liquid-based cytology; CS, conventional smear.  

*1 to 8, general hospitals; 9 to 11, commercial laboratories.

**Table 4. Comparison of unsatisfactory sample rate according to the processing method and institution**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Un满意率 (sample rate)</th>
<th>p-value</th>
<th>Institution</th>
<th>p-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS</td>
<td>1.26 ± 1.36</td>
<td>.017</td>
<td>0.65 ± 0.73</td>
<td>2.89 ± 1.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SurePath</td>
<td>3.31 ± 3.33</td>
<td>2.14 ± 2.15</td>
<td>6.04 ± 4.47</td>
<td>.088</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Values are presented as mean ± standard deviation.  

GH, general hospital; CL, commercial laboratory; LBC, liquid-based cytology; CS, conventional smear.
Table 5. Comparison of unsatisfactory samples in CS versus LBC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>CS</th>
<th>LBC</th>
<th>p-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Technical problems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patchy</td>
<td>13 (4.5)</td>
<td>4 (2.7)</td>
<td>.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halo</td>
<td>3 (1.1)</td>
<td>18 (12.2)</td>
<td>.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thick</td>
<td>24 (8.4)</td>
<td>2 (1.4)</td>
<td>.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scant cellularity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clean</td>
<td>90 (31.4)</td>
<td>69 (46.6)</td>
<td>.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bloody</td>
<td>13 (4.5)</td>
<td>22 (14.9)</td>
<td>.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GIBM*</td>
<td>32 (11.2)</td>
<td>7 (4.7)</td>
<td>.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obscuring factors</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood</td>
<td>15 (5.2)</td>
<td>10 (6.8)</td>
<td>.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflammation</td>
<td>84 (29.3)</td>
<td>15 (10.1)</td>
<td>.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacteria</td>
<td>5 (1.7)</td>
<td>1 (0.7)</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gel</td>
<td>2 (0.7)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucus</td>
<td>6 (2.1)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>287 (100)</td>
<td>148 (100)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Values are presented as number (%). CS, conventional smear; LBC, liquid-based cytology.
*Scant cells in a background of gel/inflammation/bacteria/mucus.

Among 148 unsatisfactory LBC cases, 98 (66.2%) were due to scant cellularity. Of note, all of the unsatisfactory cases with SurePath were due to scant cellularity. Of the remaining unsatisfactory LBC cases, 26 (17.6%) were due to obscuring factors and 24 (16.3%) were due to technical problems. Within the scant cellularity category, most cases (69 cases, 46.6%) were on a clean background, analogous to CS cases. However, only seven LBC cases (4.7%) showed scant cellularity on a GIBM background, whereas a considerable proportion of CS cases with scant cellularity had a GIBM background. The number and proportion of unsatisfactory LBC cases with obscuring factors (26 cases, 17.6%) were much smaller than those of CS cases (112 cases, 39%). There was no unsatisfactory LBC case due to obscuring by gel or mucus. Obscuring inflammation, which was the second most common cause of unsatisfactory results in CS (84 cases, 29.3%), was much less prevalent in LBC cases (15 cases, 10.1%). Within the technical problem category, 18 out of 24 cases were due to a halo effect, 17 of which were reported in ThinPrep cases.

There was no statistically significant difference in the unsatisfactory rate according to processing method (CS vs LBC) (Table 5). The causes of unsatisfactory results in CS cases were thick preparation, scant cellularity on a clean or GIBM background, and obscuring inflammation. The causes of unsatisfactory results in LBC samples were scant cellularity on a clean or bloody background, halo effect, and obscuring inflammation. Of note, no LBC samples were reported as unsatisfactory due to obscuring by gel or mucus; however, we were unable to verify this statistically.

**DISCUSSION**

Estimating the unsatisfactory rate and overall accuracy of uterine cervical cancer screening tests can help in determining the optimal screening frequency, a management plan for abnormal results, and the need to apply new methods or conduct further studies. A low unsatisfactory rate can decrease the chance of patient revisit, thereby lowering the overall cost of the screening program. Studies have shown that a substantial fraction of false-negative Pap test results are in fact unsatisfactory results, and false-negative results can lead to worse conditions than do false-positive results. Therefore, a low unsatisfactory rate is considered an important checkpoint before adopting a particular testing protocol into a large-scale screening program. In countries with nationalized health-care systems, such as England, cervical cancer screening programs have switched from CS to LBC methods, and a striking subsequent reduction in the proportion of unsatisfactory slides has been reported. The Korean guideline for cervical cancer screening was established by the National Cervical Cancer Screening Guideline Development Committee and published in 2015. One of the key questions forwarded by the committee was regarding the accuracy and insufficient sample rate of LBC compared with CS. The results of the present study show that the unsatisfactory rate is significantly lower for LBC than for CS, in line with the results of previous studies. Considering that the performance of LBC was not inferior to that of CS in published papers from Korea, the lower unsatisfactory rate of LBC makes it a better screening test tool than CS. The current published Korean guideline for cervical cancer screening allows the use of both CS and LBC as screening tests.

In Korea, >60% of cervical cancer screening tests conducted by primary health-care units are analyzed in commercial laboratories. However, in most of the existing literature comparing CS and LBC, the specimens were analyzed in university hospitals. Thus, the present study included three commercial laboratories among the 11 participating institutions. LBC had significantly lower unsatisfactory rates in the general hospital group than in the commercial laboratory group. In the case of CS, the general hospital group had lower unsatisfactory rates than the commercial laboratory group, although the difference was not statistically significant. Considering that many parts of the sample-processing procedure are standardized for LBC, the difference in unsatisfactory rate between commercial laboratories and general hospitals is believed to be due to differences in patient...
characteristics. In general hospitals, patients who have been diagnosed as having atypical squamous cells of undetermined significance or higher cytologic atypia at their first screening are often referred to pathologists and reexamined. A precondition exists that there must be no atypical cells in a sample judged to be unsatisfactory; thus, the high fraction of patients with cytologic atypia likely contributes to the lower unsatisfactory rate in general hospitals than in commercial laboratories.

In terms of the particular LBC product used, six of the 11 participating institutions used ThinPrep, three used SurePath, and two used CellPrep. There was no significant difference in unsatisfactory rates for tests conducted using the three different LBC products, although SurePath tended to have a lower unsatisfactory rate compared to ThinPrep and CellPrep, which were similar to one another. These results are in line with a previous study showing that SurePath has a lower unsatisfactory rate than ThinPrep. Of note, one confounding variable could be that all three institutions using SurePath were general hospitals.

The analysis revealed that in CS, unsatisfactory test results were caused by a variety of factors, whereas in LBC, two-thirds of unsatisfactory samples were caused by scant cellularity. This is consistent with a previous study concluding that LBC eliminates most sources of unsatisfactory tests with the exception of scant cellularity, which is the main reason for unsatisfactory LBC tests. In particular, obscuring factors, which were the cause of a large proportion of the unsatisfactory CS test results, were found to be less frequent in the LBC method. It is noteworthy that we found no unsatisfactory LBC cases caused by gel or mucus obscuration. With regard to the technical problems, many unsatisfactory CS samples were caused by a thick smear, whereas those in LBC were caused by a halo effect. Of note, 17 of the 18 unsatisfactory samples caused by a halo effect were reported by institutions that used ThinPrep; the halo effect of ThinPrep is confirmed by another study. However, there were no significant differences in causes of unsatisfactory results between CS and LBC.

In this study, we did not use the split-sample method in which a given sample is divided and processed using both CS and LBC to compare results. The processing method was chosen at the discretion of the patient and clinician, who were unaware of the study. We assumed that random assignment was made, though there may have been selection bias. Furthermore, the study was conducted with data from various institutions, and although we provided guidance on determining unsatisfactory results and their causes, the possibility of interobserver variability cannot be ruled out. The lack of epidemiological data is also a limitation of this study. In a multicenter study analyzing the effects of transitioning from CS to LBC on unsatisfactory Pap test results, an increased relative risk of unsatisfactory result was reported in women aged 50 years or older after transition to LBC. A study of randomized clinical trials in Europe reported that there is a greater decrease in unsatisfactory results with LBC than with CS in younger women, and that this effect decreases with age. However, in young women with obscuring elements, LBC seemed to have little or no effect on cervical atrophy and the consequent low cellularity problem.

Furthermore, in comparison with the large number of cervical cancer screening tests analyzed in commercial laboratories, our commercial laboratory group was small. Therefore, there is a limitation in that the results of this study may not accurately reflect the situation in Korea. Given that the commercial laboratory group tended to show a higher rate of unsatisfactory results than the general hospital group, the overall unsatisfactory rate of cervical cancer screening test may be higher than that presented in this study.

In summary, the unsatisfactory rate of uterine cervical Pap smear results was lower for LBC than for CS. Regardless of the processing method, lower rates of unsatisfactory results were observed in the general hospital group than in the commercial laboratory group. Furthermore, we confirmed the effect of using each of the three most common LBC products. Although SurePath tended to show a lower unsatisfactory rate than did ThinPrep or CellPrep, there was no statistically significant difference. The causes of the unsatisfactory results were heterogeneous in CS, whereas most (two-thirds) of the unsatisfactory LBC were due to scant cellularity.

We compared the unsatisfactory rates of CS and LBC for uterine cervical cancer screening tests in Korea through a cross-sectional study of approximately 39,000 Pap test results obtained during a 6-month period from 11 different institutions including both general hospitals and commercial laboratories. Our results suggest that LBC is the preferred method in Korea, and this was verified by comparing the unsatisfactory rates of Pap test results. This study provides the basic data necessary for evidence-based decision making in health-care policies such as the national cancer screening project.

Conflicts of Interest
No potential conflict of interest relevant to this article was reported.
Acknowledgments
This research was supported by The Korean Society for Cytopathologists Grant No. 2014-01.

REFERENCES


Unusual Histology of Eosinophilic Myenteric Ganglionitis: A Case Report

Hyekyung Lee · Dongwook Kang · Heejin Kim · Byungsun Cho · Jeho Jang

Departments of Pathology, 1Radiology, and 2Surgery, Eulji University School of Medicine, Daejeon, Korea

Received: June 2, 2016
Revised: August 5, 2016
Accepted: September 7, 2016

Corresponding Author
Jeho Jang, MD
Department of Surgery, Eulji University School of Medicine, 77 Gyeryong-ro 771beon-gil, Jung-gu, Daejeon 34824, Korea
Tel: +82-42-259-1272
Fax: +82-42-259-1111
E-mail: jhjang@eulji.ac.kr

Eosinophilic myenteric ganglionitis is a disorder characterized by infiltration of the Auerbach myenteric plexus by eosinophils. As a cause of chronic intestinal pseudo-obstruction (CIPO), eosinophilic myenteric ganglionitis has been rarely reported and the majority of the reported cases in the literature were children. We experienced a case of eosinophilic myenteric ganglionitis associated with CIPO in a 53-year-old female patient. Histologic examination of the resected descending colon showed moderate eosinophilic infiltrates with hypogangliosis in the myenteric plexus. Immunohistochemical study revealed increased number of CD4-positive lymphocytes and stronger but scantier glial fibillary acid protein expression in the inflamed myenteric plexus.

Key Words: Eosinophils; Ganglionitis; Pseudo-obstruction

Chronic intestinal pseudo-obstruction (CIPO) represents a rare and highly morbid syndrome characterized by impaired gastrointestinal propulsion together with symptoms of bowel obstruction in the absence of any lesions occluding the gut lumen.1,2 The diagnosis of CIPO is mainly clinical and confirmed by endoscopic or radiologic findings. Chronic intestinal pseudo-obstruction has many underlying causes and eosinophilic myenteric ganglionitis has rarely been reported as a cause of CIPO. Eosinophilic myenteric ganglionitis is known as a neuropathy which develops mainly in children and shows no degenerative pathologic findings such as neuronal loss, and no lymphocytic infiltrates.3,4 We present a middle aged female patient with eosinophilic myenteric ganglionitis as the underlying cause of CIPO. In our case, we observed hypogangliosis with moderate eosinophilic infiltrates admixed with CD4-positive T cells, which has not been described before.

CASE REPORT

A 53-year-old woman presented to the emergency department with a 2-week history of abdominal distention and constipation. She had a previous history of having undergone a myomectomy 15 years ago and has been under thyroid hormone replacement therapy for 10 years. She suffered severe constipation for a long time that was refractory to stool softeners. Seven years ago, she had visited our hospital due to the same symptoms. At the time, abdominopelvic computed tomography revealed markedly dilated entire colon with feces and tapered narrowing in the distal portion (Fig. 1A, B). Colonoscopic mucosal biopsy showed mild lymphoplasmacytic infiltrates in the mucosa without muscularis mucosa component. At this visit, laboratory findings were within normal limits except for a slightly decreased TSH level (0.48 μIU/mL; normal range, 0.55 to 4.2). Serologic study of anti-Hu antibody, anti-Ri antibody, anti-Yo antibody, anti–neuromyelitis optica antibody, anti–antinuclear antibody, anti–thyroid-stimulating hormone receptor antibody, anti–thyroglobulin antibody, and anti–thyroid microsomal antibody were all negative. On abdominopelvic computed tomography, the entire colon was severely dilated and there was no significant difference between the previous and current images. Neither mural thickening nor any mass lesion was noted at the narrowed area.

The differential diagnoses included colonic obstruction due to stricture from inflammatory bowel disease or ischemic colitis and a mild form of congenital megacolon. Colonoscopic evalu-
tion showed luminal narrowing in the descending colon without definite luminal obstructive lesions. Proximal advancement of the scope was not possible due to much fecal material and the patient's pain. After 3 days of conservative management with slow bowel preparation with polyethylene glycol solution, the distended abdomen was decompressed and the symptoms subsided. Colon transit time study showed a slow transit constipation pattern. Given concern for the possibility of intractable benign luminal stenosis due to adhesive structure or ischemic enteritis, segmental colectomy was performed laparoscopically. There was no evidence of adhesion or mechanical obstruction except for focal physiologic attachment between the visceral and parietal peritoneum. The patient's postoperative course was uncomplicated and the patient's symptoms resolved after the surgery.

**Pathologic features**

A segment of descending colon measuring 12 cm in length was received. Approximately half of the colonic segment was dilated (Fig. 2). The wall thickness appeared even without regional differences between the dilated and the narrowed portions. Except for the luminal dilatation, the colon was grossly unremarkable. Histologic examination revealed mild lymphoplasmacytic infiltrates with scattered eosinophils in the mucosa. The average number of eosinophils was less than 4 per high power field (HPF). The muscularis mucosa was thickened up to 660 μm in the dilated area in contrast to the thin muscularis mucosa in the narrow area (Fig. 3A). Scattered mast cells were noted in the submucosa without significant eosinophilic infiltrates. The Meissner’s plexuses were unremarkable. Intermuscular Auerbach’s myenteric plexuses showed moderate eosinophilic infiltrates up to 22 per HPF (Fig. 3B) and hypogangliosis with atrophic reduction of the volume of nerve bundle, which became more evident with synaptophysin immunostain (Fig. 3C). The atrophic myenteric plexus was accompanied by increased fibrosis and admixed with some CD3 and CD4 dual positive lymphocytes (Fig. 3D) and a few CD8-positive lymphocytes on immunostain. Immunohistochemical study showed preserved positivity...
of c-Kit and stronger but scantier glial fibrillary acidic protein (GFAP) reaction in the myenteric plexus when we compared the immunostain results with a comparable descending colon of a 60 year old female patient who received Hartmann's operation due to cancer (Fig. 3E). Bcl-2 stain for anti-apoptosis showed no definite difference between the two colons. There was no significant difference in the severity of the eosinophilic infiltrates in the myenteric plexus between the grossly dilated and narrow portions. However, there was regional difference in the eosinophilic infiltrates between the inner portion and the outer portion of the myenteric plexus. There was no eosinophilic infiltrates in the submucosa and the inner muscle proper in contrast to the increased number of eosinophils, lymphocytes, and histiocytes in the outer muscle layer, subserosa, and serosa. There was no evidence of peripheral blood eosinophilia. Based on these findings, a diagnosis of eosinophilic myenteric ganglionitis was made.

DISCUSSION

Digestive motility, an important pathogenic factor of CIPO, is a highly coordinated process and depends on smooth muscle contractility and the related pacemaker activity evoked by the interstitial cells of Cajal (ICCs). Both of these mechanisms are finely tuned by the intrinsic enteric nervous system (ENS) and the extrinsic sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves, independently from the central and peripheral nervous systems. Based on histology, CIPO can be classified into three major entities depending on the predominant involvement of enteric neurons, ICCs, or smooth muscle cells: neuropathies, mesenchymopathies, and myopathies.

Neuropathy can be classified into two major forms: (1) inflammatory neuropathies in which a significant inflammatory response is identified within nerve tissue and (2) degenerative neuropathies characterized by evidence of neurodegenerative aspects in
the absence of an identifiable inflammatory response. Inflammatory neuropathy is also subdivided into lymphocytic and eosinophilic depending on the prominent infiltrating cells. Lymphocytic neuropathy is the main inflammatory neuropathy and eosinophilic neuropathy has rarely been reported. Distinctive findings of eosinophilic neuropathy has mainly been reported in children showing no degenerative pathologic findings such as neuronal loss and no lymphocytic infiltrates. We report a case of eosinophilic myenteric ganglionitis which developed in a middle-aged female patient with the pathologic features of hypoganglionosis and CD4-positive lymphocytic infiltrates. The pathogenesis of eosinophilic myenteric ganglionitis has not been clearly elucidated. However, interleukin 5 (IL-5), a well-known eosinophilic chemotactic factor, has been mentioned in eosinophilic myenteric ganglionitis. Although we did not evaluate IL-5, the increased number of CD3 and CD4 dual positive cells may suggest the increased production of IL-5 from the infiltrating CD4-positive helper T cells for eosinophilic chemotaxis. A few scattered CD8-positive lymphocytes may be involved in the cytotoxic reaction of the nerve plexus resulting in hypoganglionosis. Atrophic plexus and cell loss in neuroinflammatory disease were mentioned as the result of the activation of a caspase dependent mechanism; however, immunoreactivity of Bcl-2 in our case showed no definite reduced positivity. The expression of GFAP in the myenteric plexus was an impressive finding. The myenteric plexus is composed of enteric neurons and enteric glial cells. Enteric glial cells are the main constituent of the ENS and the majority of the enteric glial cells are located in the myenteric plexus. Recently, the role of enteric glial cells as a neuroprotector and as an immune-modulator in inflammatory processes has been investigated and the myenteric GFAP-expressing glial subpopulation was reported to be susceptible to systemic inflammation. In our case, the stronger but scantier expression of GFAP seems to be related with the overproduction of GFAP by activated enteric glial cells for neuroprotection as a damaged myenteric plexus. The role of the myenteric plexus as an immune-modulator and barrier was evident in the findings of scarce inflammatory reaction in the inner muscle layer in contrast to mild to moderate inflammatory reaction in the outer muscle layer and the subserosa. This regional difference suggests the barrier function of the myenteric plexus to diffusible and systemic immune reactants supplied by the mesenteric bloods through the subserosal and outer muscular layer vessels. There being no difference in the eosinophilic infiltrates in the myenteric plexus between the dilated and narrow areas was also meaningful. Similarly, no difference in ENS abnormality between the affected and the nonaffected areas in Crohn disease has been described. This finding suggests the eosinophilic reaction as a systemic reaction, and the possible discrepancy between the pathologic findings and functional impairment. The pathologic findings such as eosinophilic infiltrates or neuronal loss can be the underlying causes of CIPO; however, the clinical functional impairment is more complex. Physiologic abnormality such as disturbed activity of neurotransmitters can be another factor to take into consideration. The increased number of mast cells in the submucosa may be the finding of the crosstalk between mast cells and eosinophils. The thickened muscularis mucosa in the dilated colon can be a compensatory response to prolonged high luminal pressure. The therapeutic effect of surgery is limited since CIPO often involves the entire gastrointestinal tract with a progressive nature. As surgical approach can aggravate the underlying condition, it should be reserved for only carefully selected patients. If a confirmed diagnosis of ganglionitis is made through a full-thickness biopsy of the intestinal wall, the patient might benefit from an anti-inflammatory or immunosuppressive therapy before the surgical procedure. However, in the absence of a transmural tissue diagnosis, patients with enteric ganglionitis cannot be subject to these nonoperative treatment options.

In conclusion, we think this colonic lesion might have begun as a systemic immune reaction showing eosinophilic myenteric ganglionitis and progressed into a chronic inflammatory lesion showing atrophic myenteric plexus, reduced ganglion cells, thickened muscularis mucosa, and subserosal fibrosis. These abnormal findings can be the basis of the clinical symptoms of CIPO. The diagnosis of CIPO is mainly clinical, and the histopathology of CIPO has frequently been reported as a frustrating experience by pathologists due to limited experience. Further combined clinical and histopathological studies are needed in order to enrich the understanding and management CIPO.

Conflicts of Interest
No potential conflict of interest relevant to this article was reported.

REFERENCES
2. Lee BH, Kim N, Kang SB, et al. Two cases of chronic idiopathic intestinal pseudo-obstruction with different clinical features. J Neu...


Clear Cell Renal Cell Carcinoma with Intratumoral Granulomatous Reaction: A Case Report and Review of the Literature

Hayeon Kim · Jong Wook Kim · Aeree Kim · Hyeyoon Chang

Departments of Pathology and Urology, Korea University Guro Hospital, Seoul, Korea

Received: July 4, 2016
Revised: August 26, 2016
Accepted: September 7, 2016

Corresponding Author
Hyeyoon Chang, MD
Department of Pathology, Korea University Guro Hospital, 148 Gurodong-ro, Guro-gu, Seoul 08308, Korea
Tel: +82-2-2626-1470
Fax: +82-2-2626-1481
E-mail: breakfree83@hanmail.net

Granulomatous reaction associated with clear cell renal cell carcinoma (CCRCC) is a rare finding, and only a few cases have been described in the literature. It is postulated to occur due to cancer-related antigenic factors such as cancer cells themselves or soluble tumor antigens shed into the blood. Herein, we describe a case of a 56-year-old male patient diagnosed with CCRCC with intratumoral granulomatous inflammation.

Key Words: Carcinoma, renal cell; Granulomatous reaction; Kidney neoplasms

CASE REPORT

A 56-year-old male with a history of deep vein thrombosis located in left common iliac vein and hypertension underwent thromboembolectomy in July 2015. Contrast-enhanced computed tomography (CT) scan revealed a renal cyst with internal enhancing structure in the upper pole of the right kidney, which measured 1.6 cm. On follow-up CT scan after 6 months, the largest diameter of the renal cyst increased to 5.6 cm. He complained of no specific symptom. Renal function test and urinalysis were unremarkable. The patient went through a partial nephrectomy on January 2016. He had an uneventful peri- and postoperative course. On a thorough clinical workup, he had no history, signs and clinical findings suggestive of sarcoidosis or tuberculosis.

Gross examination revealed a 5.3 cm × 4.0 cm × 2.8 cm-sized well-encapsulated cortical cyst. The cystic space was mainly filled with old blood but also displayed a tan-colored solid mass measuring 2.2 cm × 1.4 cm × 1 cm (Fig. 1). The renal capsule was grossly intact.

Histopathologic examination revealed a CCRCC of Fuhrman nuclear grade 2, without sarcomatoid differentiation. The tumor contained areas of hemorrhage and coagulative necrosis. Thromboembolectomy in July 2015. Contrast-enhanced computed tomography (CT) scan revealed a renal cyst with internal enhancing structure in the upper pole of the right kidney, which measured 1.6 cm. On follow-up CT scan after 6 months, the largest diameter of the renal cyst increased to 5.6 cm. He complained of no specific symptom. Renal function test and urinalysis were unremarkable. The patient went through a partial nephrectomy on January 2016. He had an uneventful peri- and postoperative course. On a thorough clinical workup, he had no history, signs and clinical findings suggestive of sarcoidosis or tuberculosis.

Gross examination revealed a 5.3 cm × 4.0 cm × 2.8 cm-sized well-encapsulated cortical cyst. The cystic space was mainly filled with old blood but also displayed a tan-colored solid mass measuring 2.2 cm × 1.4 cm × 1 cm (Fig. 1). The renal capsule was grossly intact.

Histopathologic examination revealed a CCRCC of Fuhrman nuclear grade 2, without sarcomatoid differentiation. The tumor contained areas of hemorrhage and coagulative necrosis. The tumor was well-delineated from surrounding normal renal parenchyma. There was no discrete fibrous capsule around the tumor. Multiple non-necrotizing granulomas of various sizes with
As the performed procedure was a partial nephrectomy, evaluation of uninvolved renal parenchyma was limited. The parenchyma immediately surrounding the tumor showed no granulomatous reaction.

On Ziehl-Neelsen and Grocott’s methenamine silver stains, no acid-fast bacteria or other microorganisms were identified. Polymerase chain reaction for *Mycobacterium* species yielded negative result.

On a follow-up CT scan taken 5 months after the operation, any evidence of recurrence was not detected.

**DISCUSSION**

Tumor-related SLR is postulated to occur due to T cell–mediated reaction against various cancer-associated antigens. Those antigenic factors are believed to be expressed directly by the cancer cells or shed as soluble antigen during tumor destruction. As those antigenic factors are conveyed by nearby lymphatic system, tumor-related SLR is most commonly identified in tumor-draining lymph nodes. Kurata et al. studied distribution of various kinds of inflammatory cells in lymph nodes with tumor-related SLR. In this study, tumor-related SLR mainly appeared in lymphoid sinuses and T-cell zones in a continuous growth pattern. This finding supports the hypothesis that tumor-related SLR occurs because of tumor-shed antigens drained into lymph nodes. Granulomas in lymph nodes may be observed without any evidence of metastasis.

The association of renal cell carcinoma and granulomatous reaction is a rare phenomenon. Only fewer than 15 cases have been reported in the English literature since early 1990s. We reviewed the clinical and pathological characteristics of previously reported cases. Those clinicopathologic details are summarized in Table 1. Of the 13 cases reviewed, there was a male preponderance (9 males and 4 females). In reports which included the side of affected kidney, seven out of 10 cases occurred in the right kidney. Tumor size ranged from 2.3 to 9.5 cm. Most cases manifested as clear cell type, except for one case of sarcomatoid renal cell carcinoma. Fuhrman nuclear grade ranged from 1 to 4, but there was only one case with grade 4 histology which was the sarcomatoid renal cell carcinoma case. Of 12 CCRCCs with
tumor-related SLRs, three cases had documented the absence of sarcomatoid component.\textsuperscript{8,10} There was no mention of sarcomatoid differentiation in the rest of the cases.

All of the cases exhibited epithelioid granulomatous reaction related to the tumor. In the majority including this study (8 out of 13), granulomas existed only in tumor stroma. Four cases had granulomas both in the tumor stroma and fibrous stroma immediately surrounding the tumor. Piscioli \textit{et al.}\textsuperscript{3} reported a case of sarcomatoid renal cell carcinoma (RCC) containing granulomas only in the periphery of the neoplasm.

The follow-up period varied from 4 months to 4 years. The patient with sarcomatoid RCC in the report of Piscioli \textit{et al.}\textsuperscript{3} died from multiple disseminated metastatic disease 6 months after the diagnosis. Rest of the cases maintained disease-free status until the last follow-up.

Tumor-related SLR was reported to be associated with better prognosis or lower possibility of metastasis in Hodgkin’s lymphoma, gastric adenocarcinoma\textsuperscript{2} and breast cancer.\textsuperscript{4} In contrast, Tomimaru \textit{et al.}\textsuperscript{14} found that sarcoid reaction identified in regional lymph nodes did not lead to better prognosis in lung cancer. As granulomatous reaction is thought to give protective function against infectious agents, tumor-related SLR might also aid in destruction of tumor cells. Activation of immune system is known to cause regression of tumors in various malignancies.\textsuperscript{15} Likewise, tumor-related SLR may be a immunologic defense mechanism against tumor cells, decreasing the metastasis rate and expansion of the tumor. However, tumor-related SLR may only be secondary phenomenon due to tumor-shed antigens. In Table 1, there is a case without recurrence or distant metastasis after a long follow-up period (4 years),\textsuperscript{7} but this does not support the hypothesis that tumor-related SLR is associated with better prognosis. In the reviewed cases, only one patient died of distant metastases during the follow-up period (6 months).\textsuperscript{3} However, that patient was diagnosed with a sarcomatoid RCC, which is known to show aggressive clinical course. Thus, the relationship between sarcoid reaction and tumor prognosis is yet to be defined.

In summary, we describe a rare case of CCRCC with intratumoral granulomatous reaction in a male patient, without evidence of systemic sarcoidosis or tuberculosis. We reviewed clinicopathologic findings of previously reported cases with similar histologic features. Further research is required to clarify the mechanism of tumor-related SLR and its impact on prognosis.

### Conflicts of Interest

No potential conflict of interest relevant to this article was reported.

### REFERENCES

Human Papillomavirus Infection–Associated Adenoid Cystic Carcinoma of the Hard Palate

Arthur Minwoo Chung · Dong Il Sun · Eun Sun Jung · Youn Soo Lee
Departments of Hospital Pathology and Otorhinolaryngology, College of Medicine, The Catholic University of Korea, Seoul, Korea

Adenoid cystic carcinoma (ACC) is a rare tumor of the head and neck region. It accounts for less than 1% of all head and neck malignancies and approximately 4%–10% of all salivary gland tumors.1 Unlike squamous cell carcinoma, p16 protein overexpression is not a common feature of ACC, especially with a co-existing human papillomavirus (HPV) infection.2 Here, we present a case of ACC of the hard palate associated with HPV infection.

CASE REPORT

A 55-year-old male patient presented with a 3.9-cm mass in the right hard palate, which appeared 3 months ago and had increased in size over time. The patient was otherwise healthy without a remarkable medical history. He was a nonsmoker and did not have a history of alcohol or other substance use disorders. Magnetic resonance imaging revealed a lobular contoured mass in the right hard palate, extending to the retromolar trigone and involving the pterygoid muscle and plates. The patient underwent a right inferior maxillectomy. The cut surface of the resected specimen showed a whitish gray and firm mass with irregular margins, measuring 3.9 cm in diameter (Fig. 1). The mass was involving the maxillary bone. Microscopically, the lesion showed poorly circumscribed infiltrates of tumor cells forming a cribriform pattern (Fig. 2A). There was no squamous dysplasia of the overlying surface epithelium. Small to medium bland cells with scant cytoplasm surrounded pseudocysts, and mitotic figures were rarely seen. Perineural invasion was commonly seen, as was venous invasion. Approximately 75% of tumor cells were positive for p16 (RTU, Roche, Branford, CT, USA) (Fig. 2B) on immunohistochemistry. The ductal cells were positive for CD117 (1:400, DAKO, Glostrup, Denmark) (Fig. 2C), whereas the myoepithelial cells were strongly positive for p63 (1:200, DAKO) (Fig. 2D). HPV detection and genotyping were performed using the BMT HPV 9G DNA kit provided by Biometrix Technology Inc. (Chuncheon, Korea). DNA was isolated from the tissue using the DNA extraction kit, and amplification was performed with a polymerase chain reaction mixture consisting of extracted target DNA, the primer set, and polymerase chain reaction premix. Hybridization was performed using an HPV DNA chip at room temperature for 30 minutes. HPV DNA hybridization was detected using the DNA Chip Scanner (ScanArray Gx, Perkin-Elmer Life and Analytical Science, Boston, MA, USA). In this case, the tumor tissue DNA was positive for HPV type 16. The resection margins were free of tumor. On the basis of these findings, the histopathological diagnosis was HPV-associated ACC. After discussion with the head and neck multidisciplinary team, the patient underwent postoperative radiation therapy. No recurrence was evident at 6-month follow-up.

DISCUSSION

HPV has been shown to be etiologically related to the development of 20%–25% of head and neck carcinomas. It has a strong predilection for the oropharynx, as up to 80% of nonkeratinizing oropharyngeal squamous cell carcinomas are related to HPV infection.3 The likelihood of detecting HPV outside of the oropharynx is very low, especially in the nasal cavity.4 Using

Corresponding Author
Arthur Minwoo Chung, MD
Department of Hospital Pathology, College of Medicine, The Catholic University of Korea, 222 Banpo-daero, Seocho-gu, Seoul 06591, Korea
Tel: +82-2-2258-1613, Fax: +82-2-2258-1628, E-mail: minu0731@gmail.com
Received: April 5, 2016 Revised: June 10, 2016
Accepted: July 7, 2016
an HPV DNA chip, we report the first case of ACC of the hard palate associated with HPV infection.

Although p16 protein overexpression can be detected in ACC of the head and neck, the staining pattern of p16 is mostly focal (less than 75% of cells are stained), and the presence of co-existing HPV infection is rare.\textsuperscript{2,3} Even though p16 protein overexpression was observed in our case, we used an HPV DNA chip for confirmation.

The most important differential diagnosis to consider is HPV-related carcinoma with adenoid cystic-like features due to its morphologic and immunohistochemical features. Its morphologic resemblance to ACC is based on architectural patterns, a dual population of cells, and immunohistochemical expression of myoepithelial markers. However, HPV-related carcinoma with adenoid cystic-like features has a predominantly solid growth pattern, and it is associated with squamous dysplasia of the overlying surface epithelium.\textsuperscript{1} Furthermore, HPV 33 is the most common high-risk HPV type in HPV-related carcinoma; however, HPV type 16 was detected in our case.

Because of their overlapping morphological features, basaloid squamous cell carcinoma must be distinguished from ACC. Un-

![Fig. 1. On cut sections, an ill-defined, whitish gray mass (white circle), measuring 3.9 cm in diameter, involves the maxillary bone.](image1)

![Fig. 2. Microscopic findings of the adenoid cystic carcinoma of the hard palate. (A) Adenoid cystic carcinoma with a cribriform pattern. (B) p16 protein expression is seen in 75% of cells. The ductal cells are positive for CD117 (C), and the myoepithelial cells are positive for p63 (D).](image2)
like basaloid squamous cell carcinoma, ACC usually lacks squa-
mous differentiation. The most important differentiating charac-
teristic of ACC is the presence of a myoepithelial cell component.
In our case, the tumor has this dual population.

In summary, we present an HPV-associated ACC of the hard
 palate. HPV-associated ACC is extremely rare, and only two cases
of HPV-related ACC arising in the nasal cavity have been reported.
Here, we report the first documented case of ACC in the hard
 palate with the presence of p16 protein expression and co-existent
HPV type 16 infection.

Conflicts of Interest

No potential conflict of interest relevant to this article was
reported.

REFERENCES

1. Hwang SJ, Ok S, Lee HM, Lee E, Park IH. Human papillomavirus-
related carcinoma with adenoid cystic-like features of the inferior
2. Boland JM, McPhail ED, Garcia JJ, Lewis JE, Schembri-Wismayer
DJ. Detection of human papilloma virus and p16 expression in
high-grade adenoid cystic carcinoma of the head and neck. Mod
Pathol 2012; 25: 529-36.
ed carcinoma with adenoid cystic-like features: a peculiar variant
of head and neck cancer restricted to the sinonasal tract. Am J Surg
Pathol 2013; 37: 836-44.
5. Maruya S, Kurotaki H, Shimoyama N, Kaimori M, Shinkawa H,
Yagihashi S. Expression of p16 protein and hypermethylation sta-
tus of its promoter gene in adenoid cystic carcinoma of the head
A Rare Case of Nodular Mucinosis of the Breast

Hyun Min Koh · Young Hee Maeng· Bo Geun Jang· Jae Hyuk Choi· Chang Lim Hyun

Department of Pathology, Jeju National University Hospital, Jeju; Departments of Pathology and Surgery, Jeju National University Hospital, Jeju National University College of Medicine and Graduate School of Medicine, Jeju, Korea

Nodular mucinosis of the breast is an extremely rare stromal lesion described as a nerve sheath myxoma by Wee et al. in 1989, which was the first report of its kind. To the best of our knowledge, the English literature contains few examples of this lesion. In this report, we describe a case of nodular mucinosis characterized by abundant myxoid tissue with scattered spindle cells without epithelial components.

CASE REPORT

A 22-year-old previously healthy woman visited our hospital complaining of a soft mass on her right breast that had been present for a year. Recently, the lesion had gradually increased in size. She had no other complaints, such as pain or nipple discharge. There was no relevant family or personal medical history. She had never been pregnant and had never taken exogenous hormones or any drugs. The patient showed no evidence of Carney complex. Upon physical examination, a well-demarcated, protruding and movable cystic nodule was present at 10 o’clock on the areola of her right breast. The skin surface covering the nodule exhibited no specific changes and the nipple was unremarkable. Ultrasoundography of the breast revealed a 1-cm ovoid cystic nodule located in the dermal layer, which was presumed to be a benign lesion. Surgical resection was carried out without other diagnostic tests, such as fine needle aspiration or mammography.

Grossly, the specimen was an ovoid cystic nodule measuring 1.1 × 0.6 × 0.6 cm and was covered by an ellipse of normal skin. The outer surface of the nodule was smooth and glistening. Upon sectioning, the cyst was well circumscribed, but not encapsulated (Fig. 1A) and was filled with pale tan, gelatinous material surrounded by grayish white fibrous tissue (Fig. 1B). Histologically, the lesion consisted of abundant myxoid tissue with a few scattered spindle cells and had a slightly multilobular appearance with fibrocollagenous stroma. Capillaries and thin-walled vessels were noted within the nodule (Fig. 1C). Rare histiocytes, lymphocytes, and plasma cells were seen in the nodule. Neither mammary ducts nor epithelial elements were observed. Spindle cells showed bland-looking nuclei and elongated amphophilic cytoplasm with no atypia or mitosis. The myxoid tissue was analyzed via Alcian blue staining (pH 2.5) and periodic acid-Schiff (PAS) testing. Alcian blue stained the myxoid stroma bright blue (Fig. 1D) and PAS was negative, indicating the existence of acidic mucopolysaccharides. The spindle cells showed reactivity to vimentin (Fig. 1E) but were nonreactive to smooth muscle actin (Fig. 1F). Based on these findings, we confirmed nodular mucinosis of the breast. Postoperative status was good, and the patient has been in remission for 3 years since the surgery.

DISCUSSION

Nodular mucinosis of the breast is an extraordinary entity that has been reported fewer than 10 times in the English literature since the first case was described in 1989 (Table 1). Several common clinical and pathologic features were observed in previous reports. Nodular mucinosis of the breast is predominantly found in young women ranging from 15 to 72 years. The typical clinical manifestation is a soft mass under the nipple or in the subareolar region that gradually increases in size, and occasionally presents with nipple discharge or pain. Ultrasoundography usually reveals a well-circumscribed, lobulated, homoge-
Nodular Mucinosis of the Breast

nous, hypoechoic mass and mammography shows a roundlobular, radiopaque mass without microcalcifications or spicula formation.\textsuperscript{2,4,5} Fine needle aspiration typically reveals mucin without epithelial elements or malignant evidence.\textsuperscript{2,4,5} The treatment of choice is surgical excision, which usually leads to a successful outcome without residual disease. Nodular mucinosis of the breast does not have an established link with Carney complex,\textsuperscript{5} which is an autosomal dominant syndrome characterized by multiple neoplasias, including myxomas at various sites, endocrine tumors, and lentigenosis related to genetic defects.\textsuperscript{8}

Grossly, the lesion is usually a small, ovoid protruding nodule, ranging from 0.9 to 3.2 cm in diameter.\textsuperscript{2,6} The cut surface demonstrates a well-circumscribed but not encapsulated, multinodular lesion that is grayish-white, grayish-pink, or yellow-to-tan in color\textsuperscript{2,6} and has a myxoid, mucinous or gelatinous consistency.\textsuperscript{2,6}

![Fig. 1. Histopathologic findings. (A) The lesion is a well-circumscribed cyst showing a slightly multilobular appearance. (B) The lesion is filled with basophilic myxoid substance. (C) The lesion consists of scattered spindle cells with thin walled vessels and capillaries. (D) Alcian blue stains the myxoid material in bright blue. (E) The spindle cells are reactive to vimentin. (F) The spindle cells show nonreactivity to smooth muscle actin.](image)

Table 1. Clinical features of nine reported cases of nodular mucinosis of the breast (including the present case)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Age (yr)</th>
<th>M/F</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Size (cm)</th>
<th>Follow-up</th>
<th>Prognosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Michal et al.\textsuperscript{6} (1998)</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Left nipple</td>
<td>2×1.5×1.5</td>
<td>6 y</td>
<td>No recurrence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Right nipple</td>
<td>1.5×1.5×1</td>
<td>3 y</td>
<td>No recurrence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>29</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Right nipple</td>
<td>2.5×2.5×2</td>
<td>6 mo</td>
<td>No recurrence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koide et al.\textsuperscript{3} (2002)</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>RUO to N</td>
<td>2.9×2.1</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanati et al.\textsuperscript{6} (2005)</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Left nipple</td>
<td>1.5×0.9×0.8</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chisholm et al.\textsuperscript{2} (2010)</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Right subareolar</td>
<td>0.9×0.8×0.3</td>
<td>4 mo</td>
<td>No recurrence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manglik et al.\textsuperscript{1} (2010)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Right subareolar (supernumerary nipple)</td>
<td>1×1×0.5</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulut et al.\textsuperscript{7} (2015)</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Right subareolar</td>
<td>3.2×2.5×1.7</td>
<td>29 mo</td>
<td>No recurrence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our case</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Right subareolar</td>
<td>1.1×0.6×0.6</td>
<td>3 y</td>
<td>No recurrence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

M, male; F, female; RUO to N, right upper outer to nipple; NA, not available.
The histological features of nodular mucinosis of the breast include a multinodular myxoid or mucinous lesion separated by fibrocollagenous stroma. The lesion consists of sparse spindle cells, which have bland and elongated nuclei, scant and/or pale cytoplasm, and indistinct cell borders. Rarely histiocytes, lymphocytes, plasma cells, and/or mast cells can be seen within and around the nodules, and some capillaries or small vessels are seen within the lesions. The lesion neither contains nor invades the breast parenchyma. Also, no epithelial components can be identified. Myxoid or mucinous areas are stained intensely with Alcian blue and Hale colloidal iron, but are negative on PAS, proving the existence of acid mucopolysaccharide. The spindle cells are positive for calponin, vimentin, and smooth muscle actin and negative for cytokeratin, smooth muscle myosin, and S-100, probably arising from myofibroblasts.

Clinicians need to be able to differentiate nodular mucinosis of the breast from other myxoid and mucinous lesions such as mucinous carcinoma, micropapillary carcinoma in situ with excessive mucin, fibroadenoma with myxomatous stroma and mucocele-like lesions. Nodular mucinosis exhibits mucin with no epithelial elements or malignant evidence on fine needle aspiration. The presence of an epithelial cell component in the mucin suggests other myxoid and mucinous lesions. In addition, cytologically mucocele-like lesions are characterized by abundant mucin and monolayer clusters or sheets of epithelial cells without nuclear atypia and is usually associated with microcalcifications, which is a feature not typical of nodular mucinosis. Mucin in mucocele-like lesions is usually stained with PAS but appears negative on Alcian blue and Hale colloidal iron staining.

Considering that nodular mucinosis has no epithelial components in acidic mucin pools, differentiation is not a major challenge, so long as spindle cells are not mistaken for epithelial cells.

We have discussed a very rare case of nodular mucinosis of the breast. Although this entity is benign, it is imperative that it be distinguished from other lesions that occur near the nipple, especially mucinous carcinoma, via pathologic examination after surgical excision.

**Conflicts of Interest**

No potential conflict of interest relevant to this article was reported.

**REFERENCES**

Cerebellar Liponeurocytoma: Relevant Clinical Cytogenetic Findings

Alexander Tucker · Kritsanapol Boon-Unge · Nancy McLaughlin · Hassana Ibrahim · Nagesh Rao · Neil Martin · Richard Everson · Négar Khanlou

Department of Neurosurgery, Division of Neuropathology, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, Division of Neuroradiology, Department of Radiological Sciences, Division of Clinical and Molecular Cytogenetics, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, University of California- Los Angeles, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Cerebellar liponeurocytoma (cLNC) is a glioneuronal tumor first described in 1978. Histologically, the lesion is similar to medulloblastoma and many pathologists incorrectly describe cLNC as “lipomatous medulloblastoma.” Various other nomenclatures have been used to describe cLNC, such as lipomatous glioneurocytoma and lipidized mature neuroectodermal tumor of the cerebellum. To date, over 40 cases have been reported in the literature, including supratentorial variants. Recent studies have shown that cLNC lesions contain NEUROG1 transcripts (expressed in progenitor cells of the cerebellar ventricular zone) and that they lack ATOH1 or OTX2 transcripts (expressed in progenitor cells of the external granule cell layer). These findings suggest that cLNC cells may originate from GABAergic neurons of the cerebellar ventricular zone.

Ultrastructural analysis of cLNC has demonstrated the presence of lipidized neurocytic cells rather than mature adipocytes. In 2000, World Health Organization (WHO) changed its classification to include “cerebellar liponeurocytoma,” emphasizing the tumor’s neurocytic differentiation. Furthermore, in the current classification, cLNC was classified in the category of glioneuronal tumors and upgraded to grade II due to the results of long-term follow-up studies revealing a higher recurrence rate than was originally thought. For most cases, immunohistochemical and molecular profiling of the tumor is essential in the diagnosis of cLNC. While a typical cytogenetic abnormality is not assigned to cLNC, absence of the molecular hallmarks of high grade tumors (e.g., MYC rearrangements as seen in medulloblastoma) are valuable negative findings in the diagnostic work-up. Clinically, pathological diagnosis of cLNC remains challenging with many tumors misdiagnosed for histologic mimics with high-grade potential such as oligodendroglioma and medulloblastoma. In this case report, we describe the clinical, radiographic, and pathological features of a patient with newly diagnosed cLNC. By demonstrating the complete cytogenetic profile of cLNC, we hope to improve recognition and proper diagnosis of this rare entity.

CASE REPORT

A 41-year-old, right-handed woman without significant past medical or family history presented for evaluation of intermittent, positional headaches for 1 year. These symptoms progressed and became associated with nausea. The patient denied any postural instability, tremor, changes in gait, vision changes, dysphoria, weakness, or sensory disturbance. There was no associated neck or back pain.

Examination at presentation revealed that the patient was awake, alert, and fully oriented. Visual fields were full to confrontation and fundoscopic examination showed no papilledema. The patient had normal facial sensation and facial movement. Tongue and palate were along the midline. Bilateral finger-to-nose testing was normal. Strength was full and no pronator drift was detected. Sensation was intact to light touch throughout. No hyperreflexia was noted nor were there signs of lower extremity clonus. An equivocal Babinski sign was noted on the right side, but toes were downgoing on the left. Her gait appeared smooth and Romberg sign was negative.

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of the brain with and
without contrast was obtained and showed a 4.5 × 5.2 × 3.6 cm (anterior-posterior × transverse × cranial-caudal) heterogeneously enhancing mass in the right cerebellar hemisphere. The lesion was hypointense on T1 and hyperintense on T2, and it had minimal surrounding edema (Fig. 1A–D). The presence of flow voids on T2 imaging indicated possible high vascularity. It was not entirely clear if the tumor was intra- or extra-axial. Moderate mass effect was evident, resulting in tonsillar herniation of approximately 1.6 cm into the foramen magnum and compression of the fourth ventricle. Resultant obstructive hydrocephalus was mild, and transepidermal transudation was noted on T2 imaging. Complete spine MRI did not show any abnormality.

Suboccipital craniotomy was performed and microsurgical total resection of the tumor was achieved. Grossly, the tumor appeared to be intra-axial with an exophytic component and it was red/yellow-colored, not hemorrhagic, and well-circumscribed. It originated within the medial aspect of the right cerebellar hemisphere in the region of the vermis underlying the arachnoid (Fig. 1E). It did not involve the dura. Superficially, the tumor had a clearly defined margin with a clean plane between the lesion and the adjacent cerebellar tissue. In the deep aspect of the tumor, however, the interface between the tumor and healthy parenchyma was not as sharply defined.

**Histopathology and molecular studies**

Histologic examination of the permanent sections showed a moderately cellular biphasic neoplasm. Areas of tumor cells were characterized by round to elongated nuclei with scant cytoplasm arranged in sheets (Fig. 2A). Foci of oligodendroglia-like tumor cells with central round nuclei and perinuclear halos were arranged in nests, separated by thin branching vessels (Fig. 2B). In other areas, nuclear palisading, perivascular rosetting, and rare Homer-Wright rosettes were seen (Fig. 2C). Nuclear pleomorphism and atypia were minimal. Clusters of lipidized tumor cells reminiscent of mature adipocytes were easily identified within the tumor (Fig. 2D). Mitoses were inconspicuous. Rare microfoci of necrosis were seen whereas pseudopalisading necrosis was absent. Prominent vascular channels with hyalinization and occasional complex vessels were noted within the tumor. Classic microvascular endothelial hyperplasia was not identified.

Immunohistochemistry using antibodies to glial fibrillary acidic protein (GFAP), a glial marker, and synaptophysin, a neuronal marker, were performed. Neoplastic cells showed diffuse and strong immunoreactivity with synaptophysin (Fig. 3A), but failed to react with GFAP. Staining for GFAP and CD34 highlighted background reactive gliosis and blood vessels, respectively (Fig. 3B). Inhibin, CD99, and neurofilament immunoreactions were negative in tumor cells. The proliferative rate based on Ki-67 nuclear labeling index was estimated at 3%–5% (Fig. 3C). Although overall morphologic and immunohistochemical profile did not favor a high grade tumor, select molecular studies were performed.

Fluorescent in-situ hybridization (FISH) studies showed no evidence of 1p/19q co-deletion, N-MYC or epidermal growth fac-

![Fig. 1. Radiographic and gross appearance. Magnetic resonance imaging of heterogeneously-enhancing right cerebellar hemisphere mass. Axial T1-weighted precontrast (A), T1-weighted postcontrast (B), T2-weighted (C), and fluid attenuated inversion recovery (D) images through the posterior fossa. Intraoperative photograph of tumor and surrounding cerebellum (E).](http://jpatholtm.org/)
tor receptor (EGFR) amplification, MYC or EWSR1 rearrangements, or PTEN deletion. However, these studies detected three to six copies each of chromosomes 1, 2, 7, 8q, 10, 19, and 22q in 50%–80% ([151–247]/300) of nuclei examined (Fig. 3D).

**DISCUSSION**

The case described here highlights the main clinical, radiographic and pathologic features of cLNC. With its histologic similarity to many other neoplasms, surgical pathologists must include cLNC in the differential diagnoses of lesions of the posterior fossa with a clear cell morphology (oligodendroglioma, hemangioblastoma, and clear cell ependymoma), neuroectodermal tumors (medulloblastoma), and tumors with possible lipidized component (glioblastoma and meningioma). Without a clear diagnostic rubric, most histologic and molecular studies aim to exclude tumors of high-grade potential, rendering the diagnosis of cLNC as a diagnosis of exclusion. The importance of accurate diagnosis cannot be overstated, as it used to guide further therapeutic intervention and determination of the patient’s prognosis.

Histologically, cLNC appears as monotonous sheets of clear cells or oligodendroglia-like cells, as well as characteristic lipidized cells. Biphasic patterns of dense cellularity alternating with clear cell areas, such as in this case, have also been reported. Nuclear palisading, true rosette formation and perivascular arrangements were also noted in our case; however, this is not typical. Areas of high cellularity and rosette formation may prompt some pathologists to consider the diagnosis of glioblastoma or ependymoma; however, unlike these entities, cLNC is rarely mitotically active. Features such as necrosis and vascular endothelial hyperplasia, when present, are not correlated with malignant transformation or rapid regrowth and have no effect on overall prognosis. Conversely, there are a few reports describing aggressive clinical tumor behavior in the absence of the classic high-grade features, although this evidence is limited.

The most common alternative diagnosis considered by pathologists reviewing cases of cLNC is medulloblastoma. Medulloblastoma is the most prevalent primary malignancy of the posterior fossa, seen most commonly in children and young adults. In contrast, cLNC is typically diagnosed in adults. Histologically, medulloblastoma has a more primitive or embryonal appear-

![Fig. 2. Hematoxylin and eosin staining. (A) Areas of dense cellularity and scattered prominent vascular channels. (B) Oligodendroglial-like areas demonstrating cells with distinct perinuclear halos and a chicken wire vascular pattern. (C) Region of palisading tumor nuclei reminiscent of ependymoma. (D) Foci of lipidized cells.](https://doi.org/10.4132/jptm.2016.07.24)
ance than the neurocytic morphology observed in the cLNC. Similarly, anaplasia, nuclear crowding, and high proliferation rates are more common in medulloblastoma than in cLNC. In addition, clear cell morphology and lipidized cells are not typical findings in medulloblastoma, but are seen in cLNC.

Other tumors that are considered part of the differential diagnosis for cLNC include oligodendroglioma and clear cell ependymoma. In general, the diagnosis of oligodendroglioma in the

![Fig. 3. Immunohistochemistry and fluorescent in-situ hybridization.](image)

(A) Diffuse synaptophysin immunoreactivity within the tumor. (B) Reactive gliosis on glial fibrillary acidic protein immunohistochemistry, but no tumor immunoreactivity. (C) Low Ki-67 nuclear labeling index, estimated at 3%–5%. (D) Fluorescent in-situ hybridization demonstrating lack of epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) amplification or MYC rearrangement.

**Table 1.** Demographic and pathologic comparison of cLNC and central neurocytoma, clear cell ependymoma, oligodendroglioma, and medulloblastoma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Cerebellar liponeurocytoma</th>
<th>Central neurocytoma</th>
<th>Clear cell ependymoma</th>
<th>Oligodendroglioma</th>
<th>Medulloblastoma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Age of diagnosis (yr)</strong></td>
<td>50–60</td>
<td>20–40</td>
<td>1–20</td>
<td>30–50</td>
<td>5–30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>WHO grade</strong></td>
<td>II</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>II or III</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Histology</strong></td>
<td>Neurocytic clear cells in sheets with lipidized cells</td>
<td>Clear cells, modest cytoplasm, salt and pepper chromatin</td>
<td>Clear cells, round nuclei, perinuclear halos, perivascular rosettes</td>
<td>Clear cells, dark nuclei, “chicken wire” vasculature</td>
<td>Highly cellular, small, round, primitive/embryonal cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>High grade features</strong></td>
<td>Uncommon</td>
<td>Uncommon</td>
<td>Common</td>
<td>Common</td>
<td>Common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IHC hallmark</strong></td>
<td>Synaptophysin +, GFAP +/−, Ki-67 &lt;5%</td>
<td>Synaptophysin +, GFAP −, Ki-67 &lt;5%</td>
<td>GFAP +, EMA + (dot-like), Vimentin ++, Ki-67 &lt;5%</td>
<td>IDH-1 (R132H) +/−, Olig2 +, Synaptophysin +/−, Ki-67 variable</td>
<td>Synaptophysin ++, NSE ++, Vimentin ++, Ki-67 high (&gt;20%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genetic hallmark</strong></td>
<td>Preserved MYC status, no 1p/19q loss, no IDH1 mutation, possible TP53 mutation</td>
<td>Gain of chromosome 7</td>
<td>Loss of chromosome 22</td>
<td>Dual 1p/19q loss</td>
<td>Isochromosome 17q, MYC rearrangement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

cLNC, cerebellar liponeurocytoma; WHO, World Health Organization; IHC, immunohistochemistry; GFAP, glial fibrillary acidic protein; EMA, epithelial membrane antigen; IDH-1, isocitrinate dehydrogenase 1; NSE, neuron-specific enolase.
cerebellum should be approached cautiously and cLNC should always be included in its differential diagnosis. Despite clear cell morphology, oligodendroglioma lacks the extensive neuronal differentiation or lipidization that is found in cLNC. Similarly, clear cell ependymoma is generally strongly immunoreactive to GFAP, lacks lipid-laden cells, and histologically presents with higher-grade nuclear features.

When studied with immunohistochemistry, cLNC is immunoreactive with the most commonly used neuronal markers (i.e., neuron-specific enolase, synaptophysin, Neu-N, chromogranin A, and MAP-2). Glial differentiation and GFAP expression when present are limited. Cases with skeletal muscle differentiation, albeit uncommon, may show desmin expression. The Ki-67 proliferation index for cLNC is generally significantly lower than that for medulloblastoma and other high grade mimics, typically <5%. In many cases a low mitotic rate and low Ki-67 proliferation index can be used to exclude medulloblastoma as a likely consideration when histological diagnosis is less clear.

Although current literature tends to use histologic and molecular markers for neurocytomas to classify cLNC, recent studies question this practice and suggest that cLNC may have an alternative genetic pathogenesis. In central neurocytoma, polysomic gain of chromosome 7 is found frequently and isolated loss of 1p and 19q have also been reported. In extraventricular neurocytomas, dual 1p/19q loss and particularly t(1;19)(q10; p10), is observed and has been associated with atypical histologic features and increased mitotic activity. It should be noted that dual 1p/19q loss is considered the genetic hallmark of oligodendroglioma and is not seen in central neurocytoma. In contrast to central and extraventricular neurocytoma, there are no detailed cytogenetic reports of cLNC tumors.

In the case presented here, there was no evidence of 1p/19q co-deletion, N-MYC or EGFR amplification, MYC or EWSR1 rearrangements, or PTEN deletion. Cytogenetic studies detected three to six copies each of chromosomes 1, 2, 7, 8q, 10, 19, and 22q. In addition to preserved MYC status, detailed cluster DNA analyses was used to distinguish cLNC from medulloblastoma. Typically cLNC lacks isochromosome 17 or mutations of the beta-catenin (CTNNB1), PTCH or adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) genes which are often found in medulloblastoma. Unlike astrocytic tumors, IDH1 mutation is not commonly present in cLNC and there was no IDH1 mutation in codon 132 in the case presented here. TP53 mutations are seen in 20% of the cLNC cases, although not in the case described above, which is a higher rate than in medulloblastoma and usually not found in central neurocytoma. Recent data show the upregulation of FABP4, a gene primarily expressed in adipocytes and macrophages. Unfortunately most of these molecular markers are not available to clinical testing. The specificity or prognostic significance of these findings remains to be determined, although it appears likely that cLNC is a genetically distinct entity from other forms of neurocytoma. We recommend that role of FISH studies in the diagnosis of cLNC is to test for clinically relevant genetic abnormalities known to be associated with histologic mimics of cLNC as their absence could be of tremendous diagnostic and prognostic value (Table 1).

According to the WHO classification, cLNC is considered a low-grade lesion; however, long-term follow-up of patients diagnosed with this tumor is imperative. Recent research suggests that the recurrence rate for cLNC may be much higher than previously believed—has high as 40% within 12 years for patients treated surgically. Currently, the standard of care for treating these tumors involves surgical resection and serial neuroimaging. Although evidence is limited, some clinicians advocate adjuvant radiotherapy in cases of subtotal resection or recurrence if reoperation is not possible. Like most primary intracranial neoplasms, extra cranial metastasis is rare and only one case of distant metastases has been reported in the literature. There are currently no accepted histologic features of cLNC that can be relied on to indicate a more aggressive nature of increased likelihood of recurrence. Atypical features including high proliferative index, necrosis, high mitotic activity, and prominent vascular hyperplasia may warrant a close clinical follow-up, although these findings have not yet been correlated with clinical outcome. It remains to be elucidated whether these atypical features are truly predictive of a more malignant biologic behavior since some tumors recur in the absence of atypical histopathology.

This case report is the first complete description of the clinical, radiographic, histologic, immunohistochemical and genetic findings of cLNC. Although no one immunohistochemical marker, genetic profile or histologic feature distinguishes cLNC, a constellation of findings from multiple modalities can be used to correctly diagnosis this lesion. Further study of cLNC will be required to better understand its pathophysiology, identify a unique diagnostic indicator and perhaps find a cure for this rare brain tumor.

Conflicts of Interest

No potential conflict of interest relevant to this article was reported.
REFERENCES

Nuclear Features of Follicular Patterned Thyroid Tumors